Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 940SC.

- Read First Step Guide and this guide thoroughly before using handset to ensure proper usage.
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.
- Handset is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (�P.15-27).

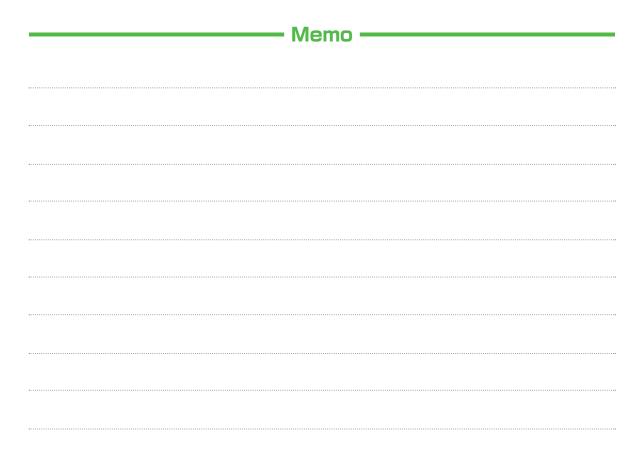
Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (�P.15-27).





- Use only specified Charger (sold separately) for charging.
- Handset takes microSDTM/microSDHC™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this guide.
- Download Samsung New PC Studio from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/940download.html).



Chapter Contents At a Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet Services	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player	8
Entertainment	9
Handy Extras	10
Handset Security	11
Data Folder & Memory Card	12
Connectivity & File Backup	13
Handset Customization	14
Appendix	15

i

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 940SC is referred to as "handset". Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screenshots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screenshots and 940SC Illustrations

Screenshots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearance.

In some screenshots, Wallpaper is set to None for Display image clarity.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

Handset Use Overseas

In this guide and on handset, "overseas" or "abroad" means "outside Japan" with regard to handset/service usage.

Symbols

In this guide, graphics represent handset keys; see "Parts & Functions" (�P.1-2). Alternatively, use Touch Panel and Stylus to access functions. Touch Panel operations are indicated as follows:

Toolbar

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display.



Toolbar

Tap Menu items to select them.

Toolbar Operations

Tap Phone

-Assigned Function

Touch Panel Operations

Touch Panel supports Stylus taps or swipes. See "Touch Panel" (♠P.1-5).

Menu Operations

Menu operation explanations are abbreviated with arrows.

Menu



Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display settings \rightarrow Wallpapers

Tap these menu items in sequence

For details, see "Using Main Menu" (�P.2-3).

Highlighting

In this guide, "highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Introduction
Accessories
About This Guide ii
Contents iv
Safety Precautions vii
General Notes xiv
SAR Certification xviii
FCC RF Exposure Information xix
European RF Exposure Information xix

1 Getting Started

Parts & Functions
Touch Panel
Motion Control
USIM Card
Battery & Charger 1-9
Power On/Off1-13
Account Details
Handling Precautions
(Touch Panel & Key Lock) 1-14
Standby Display
Minding Mobile Manners 1-15
Security Codes
Advanced Settings 1-21

2 Basic Operations

Accessing Functions2-2
Incoming Settings 2-5
Standby Display Options 2-6
Widgets (Japanese) 2-7
Text Entry2-8
User's Dictionary (Japanese) 2-14
Phone Book
Advanced Settings 2-20

3 Calling

Voice Call3-2
Video Call
Favorites
Emergency Numbers
Answering Machine
Black List
Call Log Records
Checking Call Time/Cost3-12
International Calling
Global Roaming
Optional Services
Advanced Settings 3-21

4 Messaging

Messaging Basics4-2
Customizing Mail Address 4-4
Creating/Sending Messages4-4
Incoming Messages 4-8
Using Messages
Managing Messages 4-15
Advanced Settings 4-17

5 Internet Services

Internet Services 5-2
Yahoo! Keitai5-3
PC Site Browser 5-4
Page Operations5-5
Bookmarks & Saved Pages5-8
RSS Feed
Advanced Settings 5-10

6 Digital TV

njoy One Seg in Wide Screen 6-2
recautions for Watching TV 6-3
eceiving Call While Watching TV 6-4
hannel Setup (Area Setup)6-4
Vatching TV6-5
ecord/Playback Programs6-8

V Timer/TV Timer Recording	G S Fi
7 Camera & Imaging	S S
apturing Image, Recording Movie & Editing	S N B W A
8 Media Player	U A
Ising Media Player 8-2 Iownloading Media Files 8-3 Ialaying Music 8-4 Ialaying Movie 8-6 Ising Playlist 8-7 treaming 8-8 dvanced Settings 8-9	C T S E V
0 Entortainment	_

Games
5! Quick News (Japanese) 9-5
ree Content
i! Contents Store9-6
5! Information Channel
i! Friend's Status9-7
Near Chat (Japanese) 9-10
BookSurfing [®] (Japanese) 9-12
Biorhythm
Vidgets (Japanese) 9-13
Advanced Settings
10 Handy Extras
III IIIIII EXCIUS
Jseful Handset Applications10-2
Alarms
Calendar
āsks
Osaifu-Keitai [®]

10 Handy Extras
Jseful Handset Applications10-2
Alarms
Calendar
Tasks
Osaifu-Keitai [®]
i! GPS Navi
Expense Manager10-9
Norld Clock
Stopwatch
Countdown Timer10-10
Good Night Timer10-11
Calculator
Converter10-12
Jotopad 10.12

Voice Recorder10-	13
Barcode Reader 10-	14
File Viewer	16
Dictionary10-	17
Dummy Call	17
Advanced Settings 10-	18

11 Handse	t Security
-----------	------------

Handset Security	-2
Changing Phone Password11	-3
Phone Lock	-3
Function Lock11	-7
Restoring Default Settings	-8
Advanced Settings	-9

12 Data Folder & Memory Card

Data Folder	-2
Viewing Files	4
Managing Files/Folders 12-	-7
Memory Card	.9
Viewing Memory Status12-1	1
Advanced Settings	1

13	Connectivity	&	File	Backu
----	--------------	---	------	-------

File Transfers & Backup
Infrared
Bluetooth®13
IC Transmission
USB Connection
Memory Card Backup
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) 13-1
Advanced Settings

14 Handset Customization

Phone Settings14-2
Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings14-3
Display & Font Settings
Manner Mode Settings14-5
Call Settings14-5
Phone Book Settings
Messaging Settings 14-10
Internet Settings14-13
Digital TV Settings
Camera Settings14-17
Media Player Settings 14-19
Entertainment Setting
Security Settings14-22
Memory Settings
Connectivity Settings 14-24

15 Appendix

Froubleshooting15-2
Software Update
Function List
Text Entry Window Key Assignments15-8
Symbols
Pictograms
Memory
Specifications15-13
ndex
Objective Index
Advanced Settings Index 15-25
Narranty & Service
Customer Service

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
Warning	Risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
Caution	Risk of injury ² or damage to property ³ from improper use

- 1 "Serious injury" includes blindness, wounds, low/high heat burns, electric shock, bone fractures, poisoning or other physical harm with aftereffects, or requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.
- 2 "Injury" includes wounds, burns, electric shock or other physical harm not requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.
- **3** "Damage to property" includes damage to home, furniture, livestock, pets, etc.

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

Prohibited	Prohibited actions
Do Not Disassemble	Disassembly prohibited
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	Exposure to liquids prohibited
Do Not Use Wet Hands	Use with wet hands prohibited
Compulsory	Compulsory actions
Disconnect Power Source	Unplug Charger from outlet

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)



Use specified battery and Charger (sold separately) only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware



May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.

Disassemble

Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use them in an appropriate place properly.



Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).



May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.



Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.



Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.



Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause Compulsory fire/explosion.

To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.



Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:



Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger from connector or car cigarette socket.

Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from Charging terminals, External Device



Prohibited

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

or Memory Card Holder.



Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.



Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or during Charge.

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.



Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.

Compulsory

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.



Misuse may cause injury, etc.

Battery



Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.



Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal iewelry, etc.).



Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Eyes may be severely damaged.

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.



Compulsory



If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.



Compulsory

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Caution

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.



Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Handset



Do not use handset while driving or cycling.



Accidents may result.

Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.



May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment: fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

Because handset radio waves may impair aircraft operations, please power off handset while aboard.



When handset use aboard aircraft is allowed, please follow instructions of airline personnel.

Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.



May cause heart damage.

Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.



There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

May cause injury such as loss of evesight. Avoid getting too close to infants when taking photos. Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.





Caution

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.



Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.

Prohibited

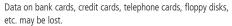
If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.



Metal and other materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (front)	PC+GF20%/SPRAY
Housing (rear)	PC/SPRAY
Call Key/Clear Key/End Key	PC SHEET/HARD COATING
Side Key	PC + POLYURETHANE/DEPOSITION
Battery Cover	PC/SPRAY
Stand	SUS(MIM)/SPRAY

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.



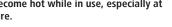


Do not swing handset by strap.

May harm self or others: strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.



Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.



Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Prohibited

When view Digital TV, be sure to view in place with enough light and view from distance, otherwise it may cause decrease in vision.



Moderate handset volume when using Earphone Microphone.



Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Compulsory

Charger (Sold Separately)



Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



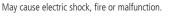
Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.



- AC Charger (only for household wall sockets): AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (Optional): DC12V/24V (only for vehicles with negative ground)

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.





Disconnect Power Source

When fuse of In-Car Charger (Optional) blown, be sure to change with specified fuse.



If unspecified fuse is being use, may cause fire, electric shock or damage. For specified fuse information see In-Car Charger manual.

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug from car cigarette socket and disconnect Charger immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke/fire.



Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.



Fire may result.



In-Car Charger (Optional) only for vehicles with negative ground. Do not use in vehicles with positive ground, it may cause fire.



Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).



May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

Caution

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger from outlet or car cigarette socket before cleaning.



May cause electric shock, etc.

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger from outlet or car cigarette socket.



Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, Compulsory fire. etc.

Do not subject Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.



May cause malfunction or injury.

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.



Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.



Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:



- · Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- · Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- · Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.



Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/ alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.

• Beware of eavesdropping.

Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

 Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Usage Limits

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
 - Camera
 - Media Player
 - TV etc.
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/ lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C 40°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera. The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

• Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109	5,504,773	5,101,501
5,506,865	5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054	5,535,239
5,267,261	5,544,196	5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338
5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420	5,416,797	5,659,569
5,710,784	5,778,338			

- Video Call, Navi appli, S! GPS Navi, Lifestyle -Appli, Location Navi, S! Mail, PC Site Browser, S! Quick News, S! Appli, S! Friend's Status, S! Addressbook Back-up, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, 3D Pictogram, Near Chat, S-1 battle, S! Information Channel and Weather Indicator, Content Value Package, Simple Select Video, Tada-Deco, Tada-Komi, Tada-Game, Tada-Utaban are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

 This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

A@@ESS NetFront®

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.
- Contains Macromedia[®] Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- JBlendTM is incorporated in this product. JBlendTM is a JavaTM execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.
- Powered by JBlendTM Technology.
 JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.All rights reserved.

1Blend

- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



- "Chaku-Uta®" and "Chaku-Uta Full®" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- microSD[™]/microSDHC[™] is a trademark of SD Association.



- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
 The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the

 Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Powered by SwiftDecoder™ Copyright ©1996-2007, Omniplanar, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Windows and Windows Media Player are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- BookSurfing is registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., INFOCITY, Inc.
- Windows is an abbreviation for the Microsoft Windows operating system.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- \bigcap is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- "Osaifu-Keitai" is a registered trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. in Japan.

Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of handset, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

- 1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.
- 2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth[®] functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
- If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth[®] emissions, contact SoftBank Mobile as listed below:

Contact: SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (�P.15-27) for landline numbers by service area.

Handset transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

SAR Certification

940SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-lonizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 940SC is 0.276 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following Websites: MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/i/ele/index.htm

ARIB: http://www.arib-emf.org/

* The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphonemicrophone.
- ** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.
- *** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank Mobile Website: http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 1.18 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.381 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of

http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCC ID A3LSWD940SC.
Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA)
Website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

European RF Exposure Information

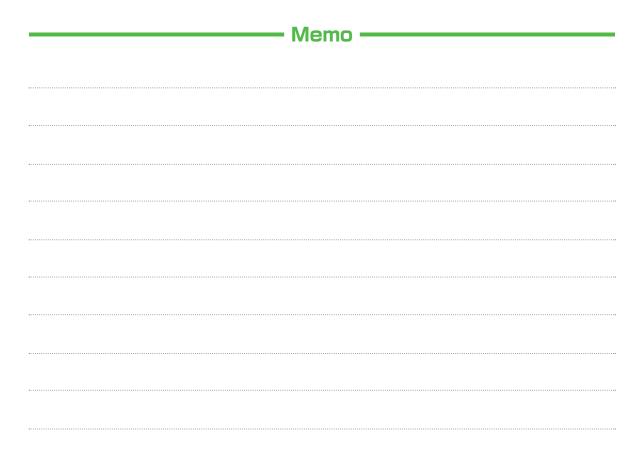
Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 1.19 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.469 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.



Getting Started

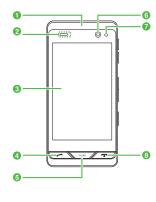
Parts & Functions	
Handset	
Touch Panel	
Tap	
Scroll	1-5
Hold	
Drag & DropSwipe	
Touch Panel Operations	
Motion Control	
USIM Card	
Before Using USIM Card	
Inserting & Removing USIM Card	1-8
Battery & Charger	
Before Using Battery/Charger	
Inserting & Removing Battery	
Power On/Off	
Power On	
Power Off 1	-13
Account Details1	
Viewing Account Details	
Editing Account Details	
Handling Precautions (Touch Panel & Key Lock)	
Standby Display 1	-15

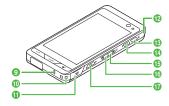


Minding Mobile Manners Offline Mode Manner Mode Changing Mode Settings Default Mode Settings	1-15 1-16 1-16
Security Codes	1-20 1-20 1-20 1-20
Advanced Settings. Account Details	

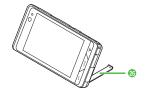
Parts & Functions

Handset









- 1 Earpiece/Speaker
- 2 Optical Sensor Measures ambient light for Display brightness; in-call object proximity.
- 3 Display
- 4 Start Key
 Place and receive Voice Call.
- 6 CLAM Clear/Back Key Return to previous operation step.
- 6 Sub Camera Use for Facial Recognition or Video Call.
- External Light Flashes for missed call or incoming call/ message; illuminates red while charging.
- Power/End Key

 Turn power on/off or end operations.
- 9 Microphone
- Strap Eyelet
- Earphone Microphone Port Connect optional Earphone Conversion Cable here.
- 12 External Antenna Use for Digital TV reception.
- Manner Key Long press to activate or cancel Manner mode.

- 10 A Hold Key Lock or unlock Touch Panel and buttons of handset.
- Side Key/TV Key Raise ringer, Media Player, or TV volume. Long press to activate TV.
- Side Key
 Lower ringer, Media Player, or TV volume.
 Long press to activate Dummy Call.
- Camera Key
 Long press to activate Camera.

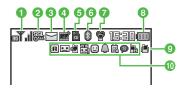
 Press this shutter to capture images.
- (B) Mobile Light
 Turn this on when capturing images.
- External Camera Capture images or send video during Video Call.
- 20 Battery Cover Remove to access Battery or USIM.
- 2) Charger/External Device Port Connect Charger, PC, etc. here.
- 22 Internal Antenna
- ② Infrared Port
 Use for infrared transmissions.

- FeliCa
 Place this part over reader/writer for IC transmission/Osaifu-Keitai®
- Memory Card Port microSD™ Memory Card connect port.
- Built-in stand Open Built-in stand to automatically activate preset function (Digital TV, Photo Album, etc.).

Note

- Handset transmits/receives signals via Internal Antenna. There is no External Antenna. Voice quality may vary depending upon where/how handset is used.
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna or Optical Sensor; may affect sensitiveness.
- Do not cover Optical Sensor; may darken Display.
- Keep Optical Sensor clear of obstructions; may cause malfunctions.
- •If using protective film, keep Optical Sensor area free of obstructions; may cause malfunction.
- Display brightness changes or Display flickers depending on surroundings.

Display Indicators



- 1 Y. Signal strength (more bars indicates stronger signal)
 - Out-of-range (*Language* set to Japanese)
 - Out-of-range (*Language* set to *English* or 한국어)
 - Offline Mode
 - **3G** Network connected
 - **GSM** GSM Network connected
- SSL connected
 - 3G Network connected (ready)
 - 3G Network connected (in use)
 - GSM Network connected (ready)
 - GSM Network connected (in use)
 - Packet Communication unavailable
 - Voice Call in progress (flashes when placing or receiving calls)
 - Video Call in progress (flashes when placing or receiving calls)
 - My status online

- 3 New mail
 - Sending mail
 - Receiving mail
 - Delivery Report active
 - Memory full (S! Mail/SMS)
- Downloading Content Key
- Music playing
 Music paused
 - Recording TV program
 - Reservation set
 - 👀 S! Appli
 - S! Appli paused
 - 🔀 S! Appli Activation Request
- 6 Memory Card inserted
 - Read from/write on Memory Card
 - Software Update required
 - PC Site Browser connected
 - Unread S! Quick News
 - Unread S! Information Channels
 - All Keys locked
 - RSS-compatible website
- Bluetooth® active
- Bluetooth® transmission in progress
- Bluetooth® Headset connected
- ◆ USB connected
- (yellow) USB in use

- (gray) Infrared activated
- (red) Infrared transmission in progress
- Data synchronized
- GPS in use
- A IC Card locked
- IC Card in use
- Manner mode
- A Drive mode
 - 🔐 Meeting mode
 - Activity mode
- Good Night Timer set
- 8 Battery strong
 - Battery moderate
 - Battery low
 - Battery weak (charge now)
 - (flashing in red) Battery empty
- Ringer and Vibration activated for calls
 - Ringer active for calls
 - Vibration active for calls
 - Ringer & Vibration disabled for calls
- Roaming active
 - Answering Machine active
 - Unheard Answering Machine message
 - Voicemail/Call Forwarding (No reply) activated
 - Activate Voicemail
 - Unheard Voicemail

- S! Friend's Status Request
- Unread S! Friend's Status notification
- Alarm set
- Schedule set
- Schedule with Alarm set
- Tasks set
- Tasks with Alarm set
- Secret Mode
- Password Lock activated

Touch Panel

Use Stylus to tap or scroll handset Touch Panel items. Some functions support rotating handset vertically or horizontally to change Display orientation. See below for Touch Panel conventions used in this quide.

Tap

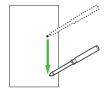
Lightly touch target item on Display. Select items to open or execute functions.



● In this guide, some tap operation procedures are abbreviated with arrows (◆ P.ii).

Scroll

Gently slide Stylus across Touch Panel to scroll menus or Internet pages.



•In this guide, this operation appears as "scroll".

Hold

Touch and hold a Display item to activate/execute that item.



•In this guide, this operation appears as "touch and hold"

Drag & Drop

Touch and hold a Display item, move it to the target location (drag) and release it (drop).

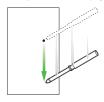


• In this guide, this operation appears as "drag" and "drop".

Swipe

Place Stylus on Touch Panel and swipe it in the direction you want to move.

Quickly open next/previous window/page.



•In this guide, this operation appears as "swipe".

Note

- Use bundled Stylus with Touch Panel.
 Finger use leaves fingerprints. Pens may affect Panel sensitivity. Do not apply force to Touch Panel; press gently and carefully.
- Tapping multiple functions simultaneously may cancel operations.
- Touch sensor may not function properly in high humidity or if handset is wet.
- Using protective film, etc. on Touch Panel may inhibit Sensor function.

Touch Panel Operations

Use Touch Panel to perform these basic operations.

Tap
 /
 to move to the previous or next item or image.



 Scroll down for more menu items, tabs or page area out of view in Mail, PC Site Browser, or File Viewer. Alternatively, when entering text or viewing messages or Internet pages, press
 / 0
 / 0
 / 0



• Tap pulldown menu () for menu items.



 Tap Mark all to mark all items. Tap Unmark all to unmark all items.



The functions below support Display rotation. In this quide, instructions are for Portrait view operations.

- Image Viewer (♠P.12-4).
- PC Site Browser (♠P.5-4).
- Digital TV (♠P.6-1).
- Camera & Imaging (♦P.7-1).
- Media Player (�P.8-4).
- File Viewer (◆P.10-16).

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Set Auto Lock (@P.14-3)
- Set Touch Panel Tone Volume Level & Vibration Level for Operating Touch Panel (P.14-3)
- Calibrate Touch Panel (P.14-3)

Motion Control

Shake or tilt handset to perform specific functions.

Shake

Shake handset right and left.



• Use to play Dice (�P.9-4).

Tilt

Tilt handset right and left.



• Use to scroll Photo Album images (�P.7-15).

USIM Card

Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use handset; power off handset to insert/remove USIM Card.



Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/ removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Note

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for its reissue.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or handset with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information
 (◆P.15-27) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® or video files on handset/ Memory Card.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

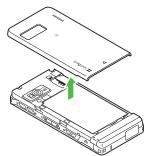
Always turn power off before opening handset to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

Inserting

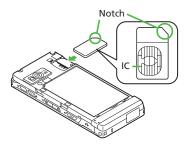
1 Press and slide Battery Cover as shown



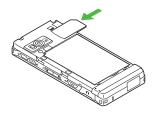
Remove Battery Cover



With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot as shown in the illustration



4 Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



Removing

- 1 Remove battery (♦P.1-8 Inserting 1 to 2)
- 2 Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or handset.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.
- Do not remove USIM card while handset is powered on; handset may restart.

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery/Charger

Charge battery before first use of handset or after long periods of disuse.

Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use.
 Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Handset uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
 - In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C 40°C
 - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (may cause malfunction)
 - Near a radio receiver (may cause feedback)
- Handset or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to touch, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (\$P.15-27).

• Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note

- Use specified Charger only.
- Battery must be inside handset to charge.
- When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet.

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
 - Storing/using handset beyond 5°C 40°C
 - Using handset in poor signal conditions
 - Debris on handset, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
 - Camera use
 - Media Player use
 - Heavy use (e.g., for using messaging)
 - Bluetooth® transmissions
 - Digital TV use
- Settings
 - Using Slide show
 - Increasing Brightness or Duration
 - Using Media Player with Backlight set to *Always On*

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank Shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal. Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

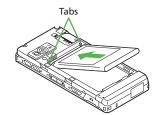
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and handset beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise handset will automatically turn off.

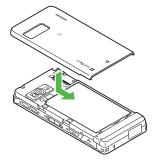
Inserting & Removing Battery

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (�P.1-8 Inserting 1 to 2)
- 2 Fit battery into handset as shown



Replace Battery Cover



Note

- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging handset tabs.
- Without cover, battery may fall out. Attach Battery Cover before use.
- Strong impacts may damage Battery Cover.

Removing

Always turn handset off before removing battery. Never remove battery while Charger is connected.

- Remove battery (�P.1-8 Inserting 1 to 2)
- 2 Lift battery up and remove as shown



Charge Battery

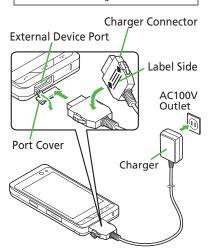
- An empty battery requires approximately 250 minutes to be charged with power off. Charging time may vary depending upon the ambient temperature.

AC Charger

1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert Charger Connector into External Device Port

Note

 Make sure Charger Connector is label side down before inserting it.



- 2 Plug AC Charger into an AC 100V outlet
- 3 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug AC Charger

USB Charge

Connect handset to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert USB Cable Connector into External Device Port

Note

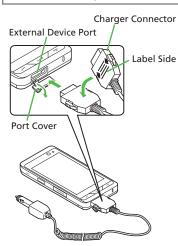
- Make sure Charger Connector is label side down before inserting it.
- Insert USB Plug into PC USB port
- 3 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug
 - USB charging takes longer; charging time varies according to the PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.

In-Car Charger (Optional)

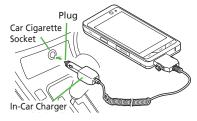
1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert Charger Connector into External Device Port

Note

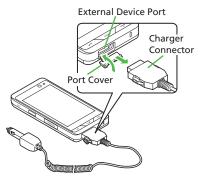
 Make sure Charger Connector is label side down before inserting it.



2 Plug In-Car Charger into a Car Cigarette Socket



- 3 Start engine
- 4 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug In-Car Charger



• See In-Car Charger user guide (Japanese) for operations. Use In-Car Holder (optional).

Note

- Avoid charging handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).
- In-Car Charger only for vehicles with negative ground (12V/24V vehicles).

Power On/Off

Power On



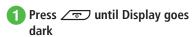




Standby Display

- To confirm handset phone number, tap Phone → Account details. Your phone number appears in Account Details. Edit or use contents (◆P.1-13).
- When handset is left open and idle, Display automatically shuts down to conserve power (◆P.14-4).
 Default: Key Lock activates automatically, wh
- Default: Key Lock activates automatically, when Display shuts down (�P.1-14).
- The first time Messaging, Yahoo!, etc. is tapped or a function requiring a network connection is activated, Retrieve NW info confirmation appears. Choose Yes and follow onscreen instructions.
- Retrieve NW info confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing All reset.
- Retrieving Network Info sets date and time.
 Network Services (SMS, S! Mail, Yahoo! Keitai, and S! Friend's Status etc.) are available.
- Retrieve Network Info manually (�P.14-25).
- This guide describes operations with date and time set unless noted otherwise.

Power Off



SoftBank logo appears and handset powers off.

Note

For proper shut down, press until Display goes dark.

Account Details

Save your name, mail address, blood type, and other information as Account Details.

Viewing Account Details

1 Tap Menu → Phone func. →

Account details



- Default: Only handset phone number appears.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Phone → Account details

Editing Account Details

Example: Save name, phone number, mail address

See "Adding Information to Phone Book Entry"
 (P.2-20) to save other information.



- 1 Tap Menu → *Phone func.* → *Account details* → Tap Edit
- Tap Name field
- 3 Enter last name/first name → Confirm reading → Tap OK
- In Name screen, tap Reading:Last name/
 Reading:First name → Enter reading → Tap
 OK to edit reading.
- 4 Tap Phone number 2 field

 → Enter number → Type →

 Private|Business|Home|Work|

 FAX|Video call|Others → Tap

 OK

- 5 Tap E-mail address field →
 Enter mail address → Type →
 Private|Home|Work|Internet →
 Tap OK
- 6 Tap Save
- ullet See Text Entry (ullet P.2-8) to enter text.
- Default: Handset phone number appears.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.1-21

- Editing Account Details
- Sending Account Details as vFile
- Resetting Account Details
- Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder
- Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

Handling Precautions (Touch Panel & Key Lock)

Note these precautions when handling handset.

- Activate Key Lock before putting handset in a pocket.
- When carrying AC Charger, retract plug blades. Do not pull/twist power cord; doing so may damage it.

Activate to prevent accidental operation when carrying handset in a bag or pocket, etc.



- Key Lock activates.
- Activate Key Lock during most operations. While in use, some functions may not allow Key Lock activation.
- Key Lock activates during calls. To use handset during a call, cancel Key Lock.
- Default: If handset is left idle, Display shuts down and Key Lock automatically activates.
 To cancel automatic Key Lock activation, set *Auto lock* to *Off* (♠P.11-4).
- To cancel Key Lock, press ••••• for Key Lock guidance, then press ••••• ••• ••.

Standby Display

Access handset applications via Shortcut Keys, Widgets or Toolbar (�P.2-2). Set images saved in Data Folder as Wallpaper.

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using handset.

- Turn your handset off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep your handset off aboard airplanes*, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
 - * If handset use is permitted, follow airline instructions for proper use.
- Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Handset offers two manner-related modes.

- Offline Mode Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used.
- Activating Offline Mode or Manner mode mutes ringer.
 Alternatively, set ringtone volume or Vibration (♠P.14-3).

Offline Mode

1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Under Offline mode, On or Off

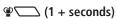


 Power off handset in Offline Mode, confirmation appears. Choose Yes to power on handset in Offline Mode

Manner Mode

Cancel settings for Manner mode from current setting mode.





- •When Manner mode is active, Pappears.
- Even if Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.
- ◆ Press ❤️ for 1+ seconds to cancel Manner mode. Canceling Manner mode, returns handset to mode set before Manner was activated.

Changing Mode Settings

Handset features five modes, including Manner.





Select mode by usage; edit Normal mode or Manner mode settings as required (�P.1-17).

Mode	Description
Normal Mode*	All Sounds & Alerts settings apply
Manner Mode	Mutes handset system sounds
Drive Mode	Mutes ringer; plays Driving Message and activates Answering Machine for calls
Meeting Mode	Mutes ringtones & system sound
Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume

^{*} Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

Default Mode Settings

Default Volume and Ringtone settings vary by mode. Change incoming transmission response by mode. Available items vary by mode. See defaults below (�P.14-5).

Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Video call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
S! Friend's Status	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Missed call notif.	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
S! Quick News	Level 0	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 0
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
System sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Ringtone (Upper: Ringtone, Lower: Du	ration)				
Voice call	Young hopefuls	N/A	N/A	Young hopefuls	Young hopefuls
Video call	Samsung Tune	N/A	N/A	Samsung Tune	Samsung Tune
Message	A Toy Box 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box 5 seconds	A Toy Box 5 seconds
S! Friend's Status	A Toy Box 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box 5 seconds	A Toy Box 5 seconds
Missed call notif.	A Toy Box 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box 5 seconds	A Toy Box 5 seconds
S! Quick News	A Toy Box 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box 5 seconds	A Toy Box 5 seconds
Delivery report	A Toy Box 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box 5 seconds	A Toy Box 5 seconds

Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Vibration					
Voice call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Video call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Friend's Status	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notif.	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Quick News	Off	Off	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
System sounds	Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call
Incoming light					
Voice call	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Video call	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Message	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
S! Friend's Status	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Missed call notif.	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
S! Quick News	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Alarms	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Delivery report	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green

Mo Item	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Notification light					
Missed call	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue
Message	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Answering machine	White	White	White	White	White
S! Friend's Status	Light Blue				
Missed call notif.	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue
Missed alarm	Pink	Pink	Pink	Pink	Pink
Delivery report	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Answering machine	Off	On	N/A*	Off	Off

^{*} Answering machine activates automatically in Drive mode and cannot be disabled.

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

Phone Password

The four-digit number (Default: 9999) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

- Entered Phone Password digits are represented with *
- If incorrect, an error message appears. Try again.
- Phone Password can be changed on handset (P.11-3).

Center Access Code

Four-digit number specified at subscription; required to change service subscriptions or optional services to operate handset from landlines.

Network Password

Four-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering incorrect Network Password three consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (�P.15-27).

 Network Password can be changed on handset (◆P.3-20).

Note

- Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, and Network Password. If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (◆P.15-27).
- Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others.
 SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.

PIN Code

USIM Card features two security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN Code

Use PIN (four- to eight-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of handset by others.

- Modify PIN (�P.11-3).
- When PIN Lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (◆P.11-4).

PIN2 Code

PIN2 (four- to eight-digit) is required for resetting *Call time & cost* or editing *Set max cost limit*, etc.

• Modify PIN2 (�P.11-3).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits handset function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock.

For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (♠P.15-27).

Note

- Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates handset.
 Take a note of PUK and PUK2.
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked.
 Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center,
 General Information (♠P.15-27).

Password for USIM Lock

USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. Change USIM Password each time *USIM lock* is set to *On*.

Advanced Settings

1. Advanced Settings

Account Details

Editing Account Details

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Account details* \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-17 Creating New Entries \bigcirc 2)

Sending Account Details as vFile

Tap Phone → Account details → Tap Send

- To Send via Message
 Via message → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)
- To Send via Bluetooth®

 Via Bluetooth → (♠ P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ♠)
- **To Send via Infrared** *Via infrared* (�P.13-3)
- To Send via IC Transmission Via IC transmission (�P.13-8)

Resetting Account Details

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Account details* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Reset* \rightarrow *Yes*

• All Account Details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

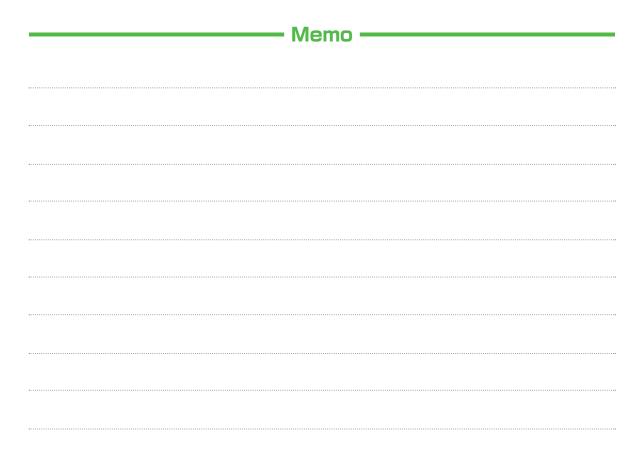
Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder

Tap Phone \rightarrow Account details \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Save to Data Folder \rightarrow Phone/Memory card \rightarrow Yes

• To save a file to Memory card, insert Memory Card.

Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Account details* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Print via Bluetooth* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-17 Printing via Bluetooth $^{\otimes}$ \bigcirc



Basic Operations

Accessing Functions	. 2-2
Using Toolbar	
Using Widgets (Japanese)	2-2
Using Main Menu	
Using Favorite Menu	2-4
Using Shortcut Keys	
Built-in Stand	2-4
Incoming Settings	. 2-5
Changing Volume	2-5
Changing Ringtone	2-5
Setting Vibration	2-5
Standby Display Options	. 2-6
Wallpaper	
Slide Show	2-6
Widgets (Japanese)	. 2-7
Window Operations	
Text Entry	. 2-8
Text Entry Window	
Text Entry Flow	
Changing Entry Methods	2-9
Changing Entry Methods	2-9
Changing Entry ModeKana/Kanji	2-9 2-9 2-10
Changing Entry Mode Kana/Kanji Katakana/Alphabet/Number	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11
Changing Entry Mode Kana/Kanji Katakana/Alphabet/Number Symbol	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11 2-11
Changing Entry Mode Kana/Kanji Katakana/Alphabet/Number Symbol Pictograms/Emoticons	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11 2-11 2-11
Changing Entry Mode	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11 2-11 2-11 2-12
Changing Entry Mode	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11 2-11 2-11 2-12 2-12
Changing Entry Mode	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11 2-11 2-12 2-12 2-13
Changing Entry Mode	2-9 2-9 2-10 2-11 2-11 2-12 2-12 2-13 2-13



Jser's Dictionary (Japanese)	2-14
Editing User's Dictionary	
Saving to User's Dictionary	2-14
Phone Book	2-15
Phone Book Window	
Creating New Entries	2-17
Entry Search	2-18
Calling from Phone Book	2-19
Deleting Phone Book Entries	2-19
Advanced Settings	2-20
Standby	2-20
Text Entry	
User's Dictionary	2-20
Phone Book	2-20

Accessing Functions

Use these methods to access handset applications:

- Toolbar
- Widgets
- Main Menu
- Favorites Menu
- Shortcut Keys
- Built-in stand

Using Toolbar

Tap Phone, Messaging, Yahoo! or Menu in Standby. Frequently used functions/settings (e.g., **Select** or **Save**) appear in Toolbar. Items and numbers vary by menu or function.

Tap an item in Toolbar to execute it.



- Toolbar

Using Widgets (Japanese)

Tap Widget Bar or Standby Widgets to select functions or use them in Standby.

Choose from four styles for widget appearance; set different widget layouts for each.

See "Adding Widget to Standby" (P.9-15) for details.



Standby Widgets (default)

Default: The following widgets appear in Standby.

P	ackage/Widget	Function
A P	ackage	
		Otousan widget (�P.9-13)
	とくぎるクーポン	Coupons (今 P.9-13)
	X=2-JZ1	Menu list (♠P.9-14)
	Wy Soft Elseric	My SoftBank (�P.9-14)
	¶ S!透報-1-大とは?	S! Quick News (�P.9-17)
B Pa	ackage	
		Widget Store (♠P.9-13)
	MySpace	MySpace Mobile (�P.9-13)
	待ちうた	Machi-Uta (�P.9-14)
	5-1	S-1 battle (�P.9-14)

P	ackage/Widget	Function		
C P	ackage			
	[m]	mixi (ᢒ P.9-13)		
		SoftBank Mobile Gourmet (�P.9-13)		
	BY SON CAME	Easy movie (♠P.9-14)		
	900 - 949	Easy music (♠P.9-14)		
DΡ	ackage			
	泛	Bijo Goyomi (♠P.9-13)		
	4.2 # 5.	Gnavi (♠P.9-13)		
	(a)	Content Value Package (�P.9-14)		

Using Main Menu

In Standby, tap Menu



Main Menu

- 2 Tap an item
- 3 Repeat 2 to select target function

Example: Selecting Wallpapers Settings → Display settings → Wallpapers



Tap Settings

Display settings

Main menu style

Color theme

Wallpapers



Tap Wallpapers

Wallpaper Menu **Appears**

Settings

- Press \(\text{CLEAR}\)\) to return to the previous operation step.
- Press / ▼ to exit menu. Handset returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press / To cancel menu. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.

Using Favorite Menu

Swipe screen upward to open *Favorite Menu*. In Favorite Menu screen, tap shortcut icons to activate functions.

•Swipe screen downward to open Favorites screen.
Call or send message to contacts added to
Favorites. For details, see "Favorites" (�P.3-7).

Adding Shortcut Icon

1 In Standby, swipe screen upward



2 Tap Add → Tap menu item → Check item → Tap Add

Removing Shortcut Icon

- 1 In Standby, swipe screen upward
- 2 Tap Remove → Check item to remove → Tap Remove

Using Shortcut Keys

Use the following keys while in Standby to access functions.

Key	Menu/Function
	Open Call Log (outgoing)
(1 + seconds)	Open Recordings list
<u></u>	Activate/Cancel Key Lock
⊕	Select Manner mode
(1 + seconds)	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
A / y	Adjust Earpiece volume
(2 + seconds)	Activating Dummy Call (set by Side Key (down))
(2 + seconds)	Activate TV
(2 + seconds)	Activate Camera
	l.

Built-in Stand

Open Built-in stand to automatically access assigned functions (complete setup beforehand).

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Phone settings → Auto activation settings
- 2 Photo movie|Music Player| Movie Player|Sub camera|TV| TV player|Yahoo! Keitai|PC site browser|Off



Incoming Settings

Adjust Volume, Ringtone and Vibration settings. Use Ringtone/Vibration pattern to identify caller.

Changing Volume

Select from six volume levels: θ (mute) to 5.

1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Sound settings \rightarrow Volume



2 Tap +, - or move slider () to adjust volume

Changing Ringtone

Besides presets, get Ring songs, music, videos, or Flash® Ringtones via the Internet for handset use.

1 Tap Menu → Settings → Sound settings → Ringtone



- Select incoming type
- 3 Select Ringtone type
- 4 Select Ringtone file

Tap after file name to play sample.

Setting Vibration

Select Vibration Pattern from seven options: *Off*, *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5*, and *Link to sound*.

1 Tap Menu → Settings → Sound settings → Vibration



- 2 Select incoming type
- 3 Select Vibration
 - To Cancel Vibration

 Off
 - To Select Vibration Pattern

 Pattern1 to pattern5
 - To Link Vibration to Ringtone

 Link to sound

Tap I after file name to play sample.

Standby Display Options

Wallpaper

Set still image, animation or Slide show to appear in Standby. Alternatively, set *Wallpapers* to *None*.

1 Tap Menu → Settings →
Display settings → Wallpapers



- Set Wallpaper
 - To Set an Image for Each Sheet

 Set image on each sheet → Select a sheet →

 Select file location → Select file → Tap Set
 - To Use a Single Image for All Pages

 Set one image → Select file location →

 Select file → Tap Set
 - To Set a Flash® File as Wallpaper Flash® → Select file → Tap Set
 - To Set Slide Show
 Slide show → (�P.2-6 Slide Show ②)
 - To Set None

Slide Show

Set up to nine images to appear in sequence in Standby.

1 Tap Menu → Settings →
Display settings → Wallpapers
→ Slide show



- 2 Add still images
 - To Add Images One by One

Select a part where no still image is assigned to \rightarrow Select a still image

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital Camera folder.
- To Add Images at Once

Tap Set multiple \rightarrow Check still images to add \rightarrow Tap OK

Tap to select a Memory Card file.

- 3 Edit Slide show
 - To Preview

Tap Preview $\rightarrow Yes$ (fit to screen) or No (original proportion)

To Set Effect

Tap Settings tab \rightarrow *Effect* \rightarrow Select an item

To Change Transmission Time for a Still Image

Tap Settings tab → *Transition time* → Select time

- Tap Save → Yes (fit to screen)
 /No (original proportion)
- ●To adjust slide size

To fit image to Display, choose **Yes** in **4**. For original proportion, choose **No**.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.2-20

- Enlarging & Viewing Still Image
- Rotating Still Images

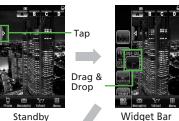
Widgets (Japanese)

Add various applications to Standby Display to access/activate information/functions quickly.

Preinstalled Widgets

- 美女暦(BIJOごよみ)
- ・とくするクーポン
- ・ぐるなびウィジェット
- mixi
- ・マイスペース @アーティストと
- 友達に♪ お父さんウィジェット
- ・ソフトバンクモバイル グルメ
- ・ウィジェットストア
- · Analog clock
- · Digital clock
- Dual clock
- Calendar
- Task
- Alarm
- · Memo (Yellow)

- · Memo (Blue)
- · Memo (Red)
- · Countdown timer
- Light · S! Information Channel
- ST Friend's Status
- · S! Ouick News
- Top3
- · Mini player
- Wallpaper
- · Menu list
- My Softbank
- · Machi-Uta
- S-1 BATTLE
- · Content Value Package
- · Easy movie
- Easy music
- Drag and drop widgets between Widget Bar and Standby Display.







Widget Appears in Standby

Window Operations

Widgets and Widget Menu appear in Widget Bar. Scroll Widget Bar for more widgets. Tap Widget list button to open Widget list. Tap Widget Menu to access following functions.

- Widget Store (�P.9-14)
- · Widget list (�P.9-14)
- Updating View (♠P.9-23)
- Yahoo! JAPAN log in (♠P.9-23)
- Settings (♠P.14-20)



Text Entry

Tap or write with stylus to enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/doublebyte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

lcon	Entry Mode	lcon	Entry Mode
漢	Kanji or Hiragana (�P.2-10)	58	Symbols (double-byte) (••• P.2-11)
カナ	Katakana (double-byte) (♠P.2-11)	記	Symbols (single-byte) (♠P.2-11)
ħŦ	Katakana (single-byte) (�P.2-11)	統	Pictograms (♠P.2-11)
Ab	Alphanumerics (double-byte) (♠P.2-11)	BA	Emoticons (♠P.2-11)
Ab	Alphanumerics (single-byte) (�P.2-11)	가나	Hangul (♠P.2-13)
12	Number (double-byte) (�P.2-11)	ab	Alphanumerics (double-byte, lower case)
12	Number (single- byte) (�P.2-11)	ab	Alphanumerics (single-byte, lower case) (♠P.2-11)

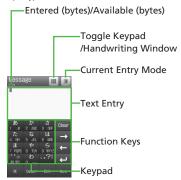
See "Changing Entry Mode" (**P**.2-9) about toggling Entry mode.

Text Entry Window

Use Keypad or Handwriting to enter text. To toggle Entry mode, see "Changing Entry Methods" (�P.2-9).

Text Entry with Keypad

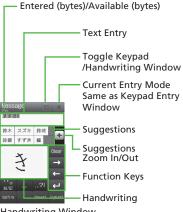
Tap Keypad.



Keypad Entry Window

Text Entry with Handwriting

Enter characters directly into Handwriting window.



Handwriting Window

Suggestions



- * Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, Alphanumeric, and Number entry modes. If **Prediction** is set to **Off** in 漢かな input mode, suggestions appear when Convert or EngNum カナ is tapped.
- ●Only numbers can be entered in Date & Time or Alarm time. Number keys, ☐☐☐ , ← / → appear.
- When Voice Call or Video Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.

Text Entry Flow

Select entry method \rightarrow Select text entry mode \rightarrow Enter text \rightarrow Suggestion \rightarrow Select suggestion

Changing Entry Methods

Toggle Keypad/Handwriting. Status may limit entry method.

1 In text entry window, 🔳



2 Select text entry methods from Keypad or Handwriting

Changing Entry Mode

Toggle text entry mode: Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), Alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), Symbols (single-/double-byte), Pictograms, Emoticons or Hangul.

1 In text entry window, 🗈



2 Select entry mode

● In text entry window, tap ♣ for ♠ / ♠ / ♠ / ♠ / ♠ for Pictograms, or ■ for Emoticons.

Kana/Kanji

Use predictive entry to convert and enter characters.
Alternatively, directly convert entered hiragana.
Katakana or pictograms may appear in Suggestions.
Example: Enter 鈴木

Using Keypad

- 1 Changing to Keypad (♦P.2-9)
- 2 AD → 漢かな
- 3 Tap three times
 - *₫* is entered.
- 4 →
 - To enter same character continuously, tap
 to move cursor to the right.
- Tap sthree times → state
 - す is entered.
- 6 Tap twice



- ・き is entered.
- **7** Tap *鈴木*

Using Handwriting

Enter text in Handwriting mode.

- **1** Change to *Handwriting* (**○**P.2-8)
- 3 In Handwriting field, enter す, ず and き continuously



4 Tap 鈴木

- After entering hiragana, tap to add " or ".
- After entering hiragana, tap to toggle size.
- Tap Geer or press CLEAR to cancel a misentry.

 If you over-toggle target character, press C.
- If you over-toggle target character, press / to toggle in reverse.
- •To set as Hiragana, tap Confirm.
- If no suggestions appear, tap Convert → ← /
 to change conversion range → Tap target conversion alternatives → Repeat steps for other characters.
- If many suggestions appear, tap 🛨 to expand Suggestions. To restore default size, tap 🖃
- If conversion fails, try another reading. For multiple Kanji words, try converting characters separately.
- While suggestions appear, tap Convert for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, tap Predict to return to Suggestions.
- Kanji cannot be entered directly in Handwriting.
- In Handwriting mode, suggestions appear in Function field. If a character is mistakenly converted, select correction from Suggestions.
 Tap to close Suggestions.
- •In Handwriting mode, 漢かな entry, entering other non-Hiragana, yields most similar Hiragana.

Katakana/Alphabet/Number

- 1 In text entry window, № →カナ / カナ /Ab/Ab/ 12/12
- 2 Enter target katakana/alphabet/ number to use
- After entering katakana, tap to add or or .
- After entering katakana, tap to toggle case.
- Tap Glear or press CLEAR to cancel a misentry.
- If you over-toggle target character, press

 to toggle in reverse.
- ●To enter same character continuously, tap → to move cursor to the right.
- •In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and tap EngNum カナ to toggle Katakana/Alphanumerics/Numbers entry mode.

Example: Enter くも and tap EngNum カナ . au au , au, or 22277777 appears in Suggestions.

 In Handwriting mode, any characters written in the field will be recognized as one of the characters within the specified entry mode.

Symbol

Alternatively, enter symbols such as \ or ! (�P.15-11).

1 In text entry window, △ → ! @# /!@#



- Switch text entry mode from → ☑ / ☒.
- Tap Prev. page/Next page until target symbol appears.
- Select target character
 - Enter symbols continuously. To cancel Symbols entry, tap Keypad.
- •Once entered symbols remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first.
- •In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and tap Convert to convert to symbols.

Example: Enter \mathcal{T}_{h} and tap Convert, . or \cdots appear in Suggestions.

Pictograms/Emoticons

Combine symbols to enter emoticons as well as pictograms (♠P.15-11).

1 In text entry window, △ → Pictogram/Emoticon



- Tap
 → in / in to switch text entry mode.
- Tap Prev. page/Next page until the target pictogram or emoticon appears.
- 2 Select target pictogram/emoticon
 - You can continuously enter pictograms and emoticons. To stop entering pictograms or emoticons, tap Keypad.
- Select in Message window/Subject window only.
 Select when using Pict Common.
- Once entered pictograms remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first.
- ●In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter はーと、でんわ and convert to pictograms. Similarly, カーい or えーん can be converted to emoticons.

Line Break

Use these steps to enter line break in any entry mode.

🚹 In text entry window, 🕶



•Line breaks cannot be inserted in some entry windows (e.g., Subject window in Messaging).

Entering Space

Entering space varies by Entry mode.

漢かな / カナ / カナ



Tap (೨೬ / ೨೬) five times

• Tap Confirm to enter space.

Ab/Ab



1 Tap

記/記半



1 Tap Prev. page/Next page and tap

Hangul



1 Tap but three times

- When Entry mode is 12/12/Pictogram/Emoticon, toggle the above Entry mode and enter.
- ●When cursor is at the end of a sentence, entering space with → is also available.
- Space cannot be inserted in some entry windows (e.g., Recipient window in Messaging).

Hangul

1 In text entry window, 🕒

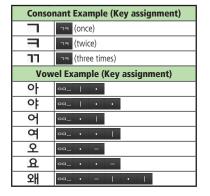


• If confirmation appears, select **OK**.

Enter characters

絵/記 〇〇二

 Tap number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and yowels



Using Quick Address List

Save mail addresses/URLs for easy entry.

In Mail address or URL entry window or field, tap More → Insert → Quick address list



Select target mail address/URL

Deleting/Editing

- 1 Move cursor to character to delete, and
 - Alternatively, press CLEAR .
- •When a space is highlighted, the character before the cursor is deleted.
- To delete all characters after cursor, touch and hold wor press was for 1 + seconds. If there are no characters after cursor, all characters are deleted.
- Press _ for text entry window exit confirmation.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.2-20

- Specifying Range to Copy/Cut
- Pasting Copied or Cut Text
- Undoing Text Entry
- Enlarging Enter Text Field

User's Dictionary (Japanese)

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.

Editing User's Dictionary

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Phone settings → User's
 dictionary → Tap Add new
- 2 Tap Word field → Enter word or sentence → Tap OK
- 3 Tap Reading field → Enter reading → Tap OK



4 Tap Save

Saving to User's Dictionary

- 1 In text entry window, tap More → Add to dictionary
- 2 Tap the first letter to add characters → Tap Start point
- 3 Tap the last letter to add characters → Tap End point



- 4 Tap Reading field → Enter reading → Tap OK
- 5 Tap Save
- •If selecting the range which includes a line break, character strings before the line break are saved.

Advanced

- Advanced Settings P.2-20
- Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

₹ Settings

- Save Entries to User's Dictionary (P.14-2)
- Edit User's Dictionary Entries (P.14-2)
- Delete User's Dictionary Entries (P.14-2)

Phone Book

Create up to 1,000 entries. Number of savable items per entry varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to access USIM Card entries. Each entry contains these items:

	Item/Description	Location		
Last	name			
	Double/single-byte	Handset: Yes		
	(saved to <i>Name</i> in USIM	(up to 50 bytes)		
	Card Phone Book)	USIM Card: Yes ¹		
First	name			
	Double/single-byte	Handset: Yes		
	(saved to <i>Name</i> in USIM	(up to 50 bytes)		
	Card Phone Book)	USIM Card: Yes ¹		
Read	ling last name			
	Single-byte	Handset: Yes		
	(saved to <i>Reading name</i>	(up to 50 bytes)		
	in USIM Card Phone Book)	USIM Card: Yes ¹		
Read	ling first name			
	Single-byte	Handset: Yes		
	(saved to <i>Reading name</i>	(up to 50 bytes)		
	in USIM Card Phone Book)	USIM Card: Yes ¹		
Phor	Phone number			
		Handset: Yes		
	Saved with area code	(five entries/up to		
	Javeu with area tode	32 bytes)		
		USIM Card: Yes ¹²		

	Item/Description	Location			
Phon	Phone icon				
		Handset: Yes			
İ	Select one of seven icons	USIM Card: Yes ³			
E-ma	il address				
		Handset: Yes (five entries/up to			
	Single-byte alphanumerics	128 bytes)			
		USIM Card: Yes ¹ (one entry)			
E-ma	il address icon				
l		Handset: Yes			
l	Select one of four icons	USIM Card: No			
		(one icon)			
Pictu	Picture				
	Still image appears for	Handset: Yes			
	incoming calls Select a Data Folder image or capture with Camera	USIM Card: No			
Grou	р				
l	Select from original five	Handset: Yes			
	groups including <i>No group</i> , and added group Maximum 16 groups can be added.	USIM Card: Yes ²			
Birth	Birthday				
	Date of birth	Handset: Yes			
	Date of Milli	USIM Card: No			
Blood	d type				
	Select one of four types or	Handset: Yes			
	None	USIM Card: No			

Item/Description	Location
Address	
Post code (40 bytes), Country (64 bytes),	Handset: Yes (two entries)
Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	USIM Card: No
Address icon	
Select one of two icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Homepage	J
Enter up to 1,024 bytes	Handset: Yes (two entries)
Homepage icon	
Select one of two icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Company	05 cara
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Job title	,
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Memo	
Enter up to 512 bytes	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Secret mode	Hondoots V
On/Off	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

	Item/Description	Location		
Ringtone				
	Voice Call/Video Call/	Handset: Yes		
	Messages/S! Friend's Status Selectable from Data Folder	USIM Card: No		
Vibra	L			
	Set Vibration for Voice Call/	Handset: Yes		
	Video Call/Messages/			
	S! Friend's Status Selectable	USIM Card: No		
	from Data Folder			

- **1** Number of savable characters varies depending upon the USIM Card.
- **2** Number of savable items varies depending upon the USIM Card.
- **3** Savable icon types vary depending upon the USIM Card.
- If different USIM Card (with saved entries) is inserted, copy saved USIM entries to handset confirmation appears when handset is first powered on. Choose Yes to copy entries.

Note

Protect Important Information

 Phone Book entries may be lost/altered if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage from lost information.

Phone Book Window

Phone Book entries (�P.2-15) are divided into three tabs. Tap tabs to view desired information.



Each Phone Book tab contains items listed below:

Tab	Item
1/6	Phone number 1
	E-mail address 1
20	Group
	Birthday
	Blood type
	Address 1
	Homepage 1
	Company
	Job title
	Memo

Tab	Item
A.	Secret mode
	Tone : Voice call
	Tone : Video call
	Tone : Message
	Tone : S! Friend's Status
	Vibe : Voice call
	Vibe : Video call
	Vibe : Message
	Vibe : S! Friend's Status

Creating New Entries

Save new Phone Book entries to Phone or USIM Card. Default: **Phone**.

Set to USIM Card as required (♠P.14-9). Create new entry or save from Call Log record.

Saving Information as a New Entry

Create new entry; save name, reading, phone number, and mail address.

- For other items, see "Adding Information to Phone Book Entry" (◆P.2-20).
- 1 Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry
 - If Save setting (P.14-9) is set to Ask each time, save location prompt appears. Select Phone or USIM.



New Entry Items

- Tap Name field
- 3 Enter last name → Tap OK
- 4 Enter first name → Tap OK
- **(5)** Confirm entry → Tap OK
- Tap Phone number field → Enter number → Tap OK → Tap Type field → Select phone type → Tap OK
- Tap E-mail address field → Enter mail address → Tap OK → Tap Type field → Select address type → Tap OK
- 8 Tap Save

- 0 through 9, #, *, -, P (pause), and + (International Code) can be registered for entering in the Phone number field. Tap PX to toggle *, and P. Touch and hold +0 to enter +.
- If a Memory Card file is selected for incoming image or Ringtone, copy file to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.
- •When using Samsung New PC Studio to synchronize Phone Book entries with a PC, secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from the PC. Samsung New PC Studio is available for download from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile. com/pc/lineup/940download.html).

Saving Entries from Call Log Records

Save numbers in Call Log records to new or existing entries.



Tap a record



- Tap Add to entry
 - If save setting (P.14-9) is set to Ask each time, a message appears to prompt you to specify a saving location. Tap Phone/USIM.
- 4 Select saving method
 - To Save as a New Entry
 - $New \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-17 \text{ Creating New Entries } \bigcirc)$ To Update Existing Entry
 - Update → Search and select entry (�P.2-18)

 → Save a number to Phone Book (�P.2-17)

Entry Search

Use ABC/Group/Reading to search entries.

 \bigcirc Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book*



Phone Book List

- 3 Tap pulldown menu for search methods



- 4 ABC|Group|Reading
 - Selected search method is saved.

5 Search entry

To Search by ABC

Tap target tab ABC ~ MXYZ / Bbb / ¬L / 123
/ ★ → Select target entry

- Touch and hold ABC ~ MXXZ to view letters;
- Alternatively, tap and enter first part of reading in Text field.

To Search by Group

Select a group \rightarrow View target entry from search result

Alternatively, after selecting a group, tap and enter first part of reading in Text field.

To Search by Reading

View target entry from search result

- ◆Tap ▲ / ▼ or scroll ▲ to search entry.
- Alternatively, tap and enter first part of reading in Text field.



Entry Details

 If Security → Secret mode is set to Hide, secret entries do not appear. In Phone Book search window, tap More → Unlock temporarily → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK to see secret entries.

Calling from Phone Book

- 1 Search and select entry (♦P.2-18)
 - → <u>E</u>
 - If entry contains multiple phone numbers, tap
 beside target number.



- Place a call
 - To Place a Voice Call

Voice call

- To Place a Video Call

 Video call
- To Place an International Call

 International call (�P.3-13 International Calling)
- To Place a Call before Editing Number

 Copy to dial → Edit selected phone
 number → Call/Tap Int. call (�)P.3-13
 International Calling)/Tap Video call
- In Phone Book list, tap beside target entry for Voice Call. If multiple numbers are saved for that entry, Number selection window appears.

Deleting Phone Book Entries

- 1 Tap Phone → *Phone book*→ Tap Delete
- Delete entries
 - To Delete an Entry

Check entries to delete → Tap Delete → Yes

To Delete All Entries

 $Mark\ all \rightarrow \mathsf{Tap}\ \mathsf{Delete} \rightarrow \mathsf{Enter}\ \mathsf{Phone}$ Password $\rightarrow \mathsf{Tap}\ \mathsf{OK} \rightarrow \mathit{Yes}$

◆Alternatively, in Entry details window, tap More
 → Delete → Yes.

Advanced

- Advanced Settings P.2-20
- Adding Information to Phone Book Entry
- Sending Phone Book Entry as vFile
- Specifying Saving Destination for Phone Book Entries
- Viewing USIM Card Service Number
- Temporarily Canceling Phone Book Secret Mode
- Editing Phone Book Entry
- Copying Item
- Saving Face Link to Phone Book Entry
- Adding Phone Book Entry to Favorites
- Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phone Book
- Viewing S! Friend's Status
- Creating & Saving vFiles
- Printing Phone Book Details via Bluetooth®
- Entering and Saving Phone Number

₹ Settings

- Select Phone Book Save Location (P.14-9)
- Change Phone Book Preference (Phone/USIM)(P.14-9)
- Change Search Method (
 P.14-9)
- Copy All Phone Book Records & Save on Handset & USIM Card (P.14-9)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Standby

Enlarging & Viewing Still Image

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display settings \rightarrow Wallpapers \rightarrow Set image on each sheet (\rightarrow Select sheet) / Set one image \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Zoom \rightarrow \bigcirc or \bigcirc to adjust zoom level \rightarrow Tap Set

• To restore default view, tap Undo.

Rotating Still Images

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display settings \rightarrow Wallpapers \rightarrow Set image on each sheet (\rightarrow Select sheet) / Set one image \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Rotate \rightarrow \bigcirc or \bigcirc \rightarrow Tap Set

• To restore the default, tap Undo.

Editing Slide Show

Tap Menu → Settings → Display settings → Wallpapers → Slide show

To Replace Image

Select image to change \rightarrow *Replace* \rightarrow Select an image \rightarrow Tap Save \rightarrow *Yes* or *No*

•With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital Camera folder.

To Change Image Order

Tap Change order \rightarrow Drag image to desired position \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Tap Save \rightarrow Yes or No

To Delete Image

Select image to delete ightharpoonup Reset
ightharpoonup Yes
ightharpoonup Tap Save <math>
ightharpoonup Yes or No

 Choose Yes to fit image to Display, or No for original proportion.

Text Entry

Specifying Range to Copy/Cut

In text entry window, tap Edit \rightarrow *Copy* or *Cut* \rightarrow Tap the first character of the range to cut/copy \rightarrow Tap Start point \rightarrow Tap the last character to specify the range \rightarrow Tap End point

- To copy or cut all text in text entry window, tap All.
- Copied or cut text remains even after powering off.

Pasting Copied or Cut Text

In text entry window, move cursor to the position to paste \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow *Paste*

Undoing Text Entry

In text entry window, tap Edit → *Undo*

 In Kanji/Kana entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing *Cut*, *Paste*, or *Delete*. Undoing conversion is also available.

Enlarging Enter Text Field

In text entry window, tap Edit → *Hide Keypad*

User's Dictionary

Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Phone settings \rightarrow User's dictionary \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check entries to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

 If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Resetting User's Dictionary

In text entry window, tap More \rightarrow *Conversion* \rightarrow *Reset learning* \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow *Yes*

Phone Book

Adding Information to Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap New entry

To Save Group

→ Tap Group field → Select an item → Tap Save

To Save Birthday

Tap Save → Tap Birthday field → Enter birthday →

To Save Blood Type

♣ → Tap Blood type field → Select an item→ Tap Save

To Save Address

→ Tap Address field → Tap Type field → Privatel Business → Tap Zip code field → Enter zip code → Tap OK → Tap Country field → Enter country name → Tap OK → Tap Province field → Enter province name → Tap OK → Tap City field → Enter city name → Tap OK → Tap Street field → Enter street name → Tap OK → Tap Additional info field → Enter additional info field → Enter additional information → Tap OK → Tap OK → Tap OK → Tap Save

To Save URL

Tap OK → Tap Homepage field → Enter URL →
Tap OK → Tap Type field → *Private/Business*→ Tap OK → Tap Save

To Save Company

Tap OK → Tap Save
Tap OK → Tap Save

To Save Job Title

 \longrightarrow Tap Job title field \longrightarrow Enter job title \longrightarrow Tap OK \longrightarrow Tap Save

To Save Memo

 \longrightarrow Tap Memo field \longrightarrow Enter text \longrightarrow Tap OK \longrightarrow Tap Save

To Set Secret Mode

 \rightarrow On or Off \rightarrow Tap Save

 Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phone Book Setting Incoming Image to Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap New entry \rightarrow \square Or Search entry $(\bigcirc$ P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow \square

To Set from Saved Still Image

Pictures → Select a file → Tap Save

 With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital Camera folder.

To Set by Capturing Still Image Take photo → Capture still image → Tap Save

To Cancel Set Incoming Image
Off → Tap Save

 If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.

Setting Ringtone to Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow **Phone book** \rightarrow Tap New entry \rightarrow \longrightarrow Tap Ringtone settings field Or

Search entry (�P.2-18) → Tap Edit → →
Tap Ringtone settings field

To Set Ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call

Tone: Voice call or Tone: Video call → Select
a file location → Select a file → Tap Save

To Set Ringtone for Message or S! Friend's Status

Tone: Message or **Tone:** S! Friend's Status → Ringtone → Select a file location → Select a file → **Duration** → Enter duration → Tap OK → Tap Save

While selecting a file, tap to playback the file.

 If a Memory Card file is set as Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.

Setting Vibration to Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow **Phone book** \rightarrow Tap New entry \rightarrow \longrightarrow Tap Vibration settings field Or

Search entry to set Vibration (�P.2-18) → Tap Edit

→ → Tap Vibration settings field → Select

Vibration pattern → Tap Save

• While selecting a Vibration pattern, tap to check the pattern.

Creating Message from Phone Book Entry
Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search and select

Phone book \rightarrow Search and select entry to send message (PP.2-18) \rightarrow b for recipient phone number or \square for recipient address



Create message \rightarrow S! Mail or SMS \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-5 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc)



Create S! Mail message (◆P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤)

Opening Website from Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Search and select entry with homepage saved (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow \bigcirc beside homepage address to connect \rightarrow *Yes*

 To browse website with PC Site Browser, tap PC Site Browser.

Sending Phone Book Entry as vFile

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap Send

- In Entry details window, tap More → Send.
- To Send via Message

Via message → Check entry to send → Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check entry to send → Tap Send → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check entry to send → Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check entry to send → Tap Send → (\bigcirc P.13-8)

Copying Entries between Phone & USIM

Tap Phone → Phone book

To Copy Selected Entries

Tap More \rightarrow *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone* \rightarrow Check entries to copy \rightarrow Tap Copy \rightarrow *Yes*

- For both Phone and USIM Card entries, tap More
 → Copy each entry → Select entry → Yes.
- In Entry details window, tap More → Copy to USIM or Copy to phone → Yes.
- If search method is *Group*, search and select entry to copy → Tap More → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone* → *Yes*.
- To Copy All Entries from Phone to USIM/ USIM to Phone

Tap More \rightarrow *Copy all* \rightarrow *Phone to USIM/USIM to Phone* \rightarrow *Yes*

Specifying Saving Destination for Phone Book Entries

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Save to* \rightarrow *Phone/USIM/Ask each time*

Viewing USIM Card Service Number

Tap Phone \rightarrow **Phone book** \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow **Service number**

 The item Service number may not appear for some USIM Cards.

Temporarily Canceling Phone Book Secret Mode

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Unlock temporarily* \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK

 If Security

Secret mode is set to Hide, numbers set as Secret mode - On appear temporarily in Phone Book.

Editing Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow **Phone book** \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-17 Creating New Entries \bigcirc 2)

 To edit secret Phone Book entry, set Secret mode to Show.

Copying Item

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap Copy item \rightarrow Select item

Saving Face Link to Phone Book Entry

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone Book* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap Face link

- To Save Face Link from a Saved Still Image
 Face registration → Select from Image 1 to Image 5
 → Pictures → Select file → Frame on Face
 - Memory Card files cannot be set as Face Link.
- To Save Face Link by Capturing a Still Image Face registration → Select from Image 1 to Image 5 → Take photo → Capture still image

To Remove Face Link

This person's photo → Tap Release → Check Face link to remove → Tap Release → Yes

Adding Phone Book Entry to Favorites

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) → Tap More → *Add to Favorites* → *Call/Mail*

 Alternatively, tap Phone → Favorites/ In Standby, swipe downward → Tap Add → Select Number field to add.

Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phone Book

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Add to S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Select a phone number \rightarrow *Yes*

Viewing S! Friend's Status

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *View S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Select a phone number

Creating & Saving vFiles

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Save to Data Folder* \rightarrow *Phone/Memory card* \rightarrow *Yes*

• To save a file to *Memory card*, insert Memory Card.

Printing Phone Book Details via Bluetooth®

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Print via Bluetooth* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-17 Printing via Bluetooth \bigcirc \bigcirc

Toggling Phone Book View between USIM & Phone

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* $\rightarrow \square$ / \square / \square \rightarrow *Phone/USIM/Phone & USIM*

• Change remains even if handset is powered off.

Entering and Saving Phone Number

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Dial* \rightarrow Enter phone number \rightarrow *Add*

To Save New Entry

 $New \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-17 \text{ Creating New Entries } \bigcirc)$

To Update Entry

Update → Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) → Enter each item (\bigcirc P.2-17)

 Only name, reading, mail address, and group can be saved to USIM Card.

Adding Groups

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap the pull down menu for search methods \rightarrow *Group* \rightarrow Tap Group setting \rightarrow *Add*

To Set Incoming Image

- If Pictures is selected, select files.
- If Take photo is selected, capture a still image.
- If Off is selected, incoming image will not be set.

To Set Group Names

Tap Group name field → Enter group name → Tap Save

To Set Group Icon

Tap Group icon Field → Select icon → Tap Save

To Set Ringtone

- To set Ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call
 Tone: Voice call/Tone: Video call → Select
 a file location → Select a file → Tap Save
- •To set Ringtone for message or S! Friend's Status Tone: Message/Tone: S! Friends Status → Ringtone → Select a file location → Select a file → Duration → Enter duration → Tap OK → Tap OK → Tap Save

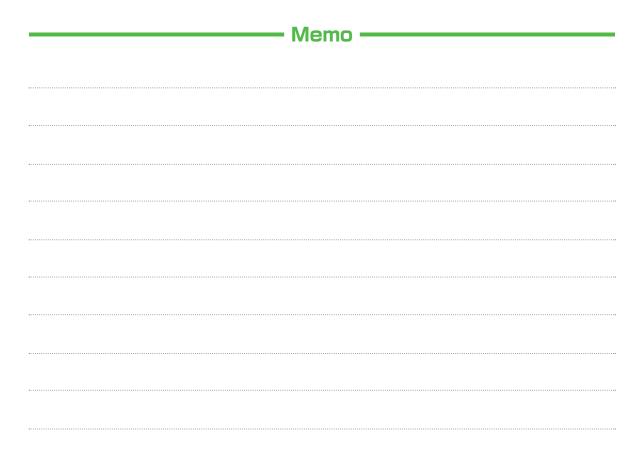
To Set Vibration

Tap Vibe field \rightarrow Select Vibration pattern \rightarrow Tap Save

- For USIM Card, only group name and icon can be set.
- •Images and Ringtones set for individual entries take priority over Group setting.

Changing Group Settings

Tap Phone \rightarrow *Phone book* \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu for search methods \rightarrow *Group* \rightarrow Tap Group setting \rightarrow *Edit* \rightarrow Select group \rightarrow Edit each item the same way as items are added (\bigcirc P.2-23).



Calling

Voice Call	3-2
Placing a Voice Call	
Receiving a Voice Call	
In-Call Operations	
Video Call	3-5
Placing a Video Call	3-5
Receiving a Video Call	
Favorites	3-7
Saving Numbers as Favorites	3-7
Using Favorites	
Sending messages	
Emergency Numbers	3-8
Answering Machine	3-8
Activating & Canceling	
Using Answering Machine	
Deleting Messages	3-9
3 3	
Black List	 3-9
Black List	 3-9
Black List	3-9 3-9 3-10
Black List	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10
Black List	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers Call Log Records	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers Call Log Records Viewing Call Log Records	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers Call Log Records Viewing Call Log Records Viewing Ranking	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers Call Log Records Viewing Call Log Records Viewing Ranking Calling Call Log Records	3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-11 3-11
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers Call Log Records Viewing Call Log Records Viewing Ranking Calling Call Log Records Deleting Call Log Records	3-9 3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-11 3-11 3-11
Black List Rejecting Incoming Call Calls from Specified Numbers Calls from Unknown ID Numbers Calls from Withheld ID Numbers Calls from Public Pay Phones Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers Call Log Records Viewing Call Log Records Viewing Ranking Calling Call Log Records	3-9 3-9 3-9 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-10 3-11 3-11 3-11



nternational Calling	3-13
Global Roaming	3-13
Changing Network Mode	
Setting Network	
Calling Outside Japan	3-14
Optional Services	3-15
Voicemail	
Call Forwarding	3-17
Call Waiting	3-18
Conference Call	3-18
Call Barring	3-19
Caller ID	3-21
Advanced Settings	3-21
Voice Call	
Video Call	
Call Log Records	3-24
Conference Call	

Voice Call

Placing a Voice Call

Directly enter phone number to call.

To place a call from Phone Book, see *Calling from Phonebook* (�P.2-19).

1 ← (1 + seconds)/Tap Phone and *Dial* → Enter phone number including area code



Phone Number Entry Window

- Confirm entered phone number → or Call
- 3 To end the call → ∠

 ¬

- •To correct entered digit, tap *Clear* or press

 CLEAR / . Touch and hold *Clear* or press

 for 1 + seconds to delete all.
- •To enter P (pause), tap P-X twice. To enter + (International Code), touch and hold +0.
- •When the line is busy, press to end the call and try again later. If Auto redial (♠P.14-9) is On, number is automatically redialed. Tap Cancel or press to cancel redialing.
- When Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is connected and Earphone call is set to On, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified phone number. Press it again for 1 + seconds to end the call.
- •To input numbers for automatic voice service guidance, tap Dial for Keypad and tap numbers.

Receiving a Voice Call

1 Voice Call window appears,



- 2 To end the call → _____
- To put caller on hold, press ____. To connect the call, tap Answer or press ____.
- To adjust ringer volume, press 🖞 / 🖟.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1 + seconds to accept Voice Calls. Press it again for 1 + seconds to end the call.
- Missed Call Window

Missed call window appears for unanswered calls. Tap View to view incoming calls (♠P.3-10).

Ringtone

Specify Ringtones by Phone Book entry or Category (�P.2-21, P.2-23). If they are not set, they will ring according to the activated mode (�P.1-17). If *Security* → *Secret mode* is set to *Hide* when a call from a secret entry is received, the handset will ring according to the activated mode.

Incoming Call Window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phone Book, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID, *Withheld* appears.

If incoming image has been saved in Phone Book or for the group, the image also appears (�P.2-21, P.2-23)

If **Security** \rightarrow **Secret mode** is set to **Hide** when a call from a secret entry is received, only number appears.

●When you cannot answer a call
Use Call Forwarding or Voicemail to handle
calls. While handset rings/vibrates, tap Forward
to forward the call to Voicemail or designated
number immediately (●P.3-16, P.3-17). Alternatively,
tap Answering machine to record caller message
on handset (●P.3-8).

In-Call Operations

Adjusting Volume

1 During a call

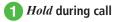




Adjust Earpiece or Earphone (optional) volume.
 Setting remains even after powered off.

Holding Incoming Call

Place call on hold and reconnect.



- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice.
- ●To reconnect call, tap Hold.
- ●To put a current call on hold, a separate subscription is required to use either Call Waiting (◆P.3-18) or Conference Call (◆P.3-18). No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Recording a Call

1 During a call



- 2 Record
- 3 End recording \rightarrow \blacksquare
- Record voice for up to two minutes during a call.
- Recorded sound file is saved to Ring songs tones in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed to, recording is stopped when there is another incoming call, and Incoming call window appears.
- If the call is terminated while being recorded, recording is automatically shut off, and the voice file is saved.

Text Memo

During a call



2 Tap More → Notepad → Tap Add new → Select Category field → Enter text memo → Select category → Tap Save

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.3-21

- Saving Entered Phone Number to Phone Book
- Sending New Message to Entered Number
- Showing or Hiding Your Number for a Call
- Setting Mute
- Switching to Speakerphone
- Talking in Low Voice
- Switching Headset/Phone
- Searching Phone Book during Call
- Searching Favorites during Call
- Using Functions during Call

₹ Settings

- Accept/Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers (© P.14-8)
- Create/Edit Black List (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Unknown Numbers (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Withheld
 (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Payphones (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Unavailable (P.14-8)
- Show/Hide Your Own Number (P.14-8)
- Set Handset to Automatically Redial Busy Numbers (P.14-9)

Video Call

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

- ●You may experience a problem with sound quality when using Speakerphone (◆P.3-22) at a raised volume. Lower volume or using Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is recommended.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality. Use Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional).
- Using Speakerphone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

Note

• Video Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; fees apply.



- 1 Large Image (normally, incoming image) Tap here to switch to small Image.
- Video Call menu icons
 - :Toggle sub camera/external camera
 - [1] / [3] :Stop or resume sending My Image
 - Zoom
 - :Brightness
 - :Effect
- 3 The other party's name
- 4 Phone number
- 6 Call duration
- **6** Small Image (normally, outgoing image) Tap here to switch to Large Image.
- Status icon
 - :Switch to headset
 - Mute my voice
 - ✓ /

 ✓ :Speaker Off/On

Placing a Video Call

Enter phone number directly. To use Phone Book, see "Calling from Phone Book" (♠P.2-19).

- (1+ seconds) → Enter a number including area code
- 2 Tap Video call
- \bigcirc To end the call → \bigcirc
- If Video Call does not connect
 At prompt, select Retry → Voice call or Create message; Add to phonebook to save number.
 Select Video call to dial the same number again.

Receiving a Video Call

Video Call window appears,

• Send My Image confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No**.

2 To end the call →

- ●To put an incoming Video Call on hold without answering it, tap Hold Answer or press ☑ To release the hold and answer the Video Call, tap Answer or press ☑ while holding it.
- Press $\bigcirc 1/\bigcirc 1$ to adjust ringer volume while handset rings.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1 + seconds to answer Video Call. Press it again to end call.
- To disconnect an incoming Video Call without answering it, tap Forward or Reject.
- After pressing in 1, My Image appears, but is not sent. Confirmation appears, choose Yes to send My Image, or No to send Alternative picture. When Video Call connects, My Image or Alternative picture appears in Small Image.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.3-22

- Showing/Hiding Caller ID
- Setting Mute
- Switching to Speakerphone
- Putting a Video Call on Hold
- Toggling My Image
- Changing Image Size during Video Call
- Toggling Incoming Image Pause/Play
- Transferring Headset/Handset Earpiece
- Adding Auto Answer List
- Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List
- Sending Push Tones
- Creating & Saving Text Memo in Video Call
- Searching Phone Book during Video Call
- Sending Message during Video Call

₹ Settings

- Set Preset Picture to Appear in Place of Your Own Image (IPP.14-7)
- Set Alternative Picture to Appear in Place of My Image (P.14-7)
- Adjust Incoming Video Quality (TP.14-7)
- Adjust Outgoing Video Quality (P.14-7)
- Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold (P.14-7)
- Set Hold Setting (P.14-7)
- Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold without Answering (P.14-7)
- Set Hold Answer Setting (P.14-7)
- Activate/Cancel Mute for Video Call (@P.14-7)
- Activate/Cancel Speakerphone during Video Call (P.14-8)
- Set Backlight (TSP P.14-8)
- Set Handset Response When Video Call Cannot Be Connected (P.14-8)
- Answer Video Call from Specified Party Automatically (P.14-8)
- Create Auto Answer List (TP.14-8)
- Show/Hide Your Own Image for Video Calls (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers (P.14-8)
- Create/Edit Black List (@P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Unknown Numbers (P.14-8)

- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Withheld
 (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls from Payphones (P.14-8)
- Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Unavailable (P.14-8)
- Show/Hide Your Own Number (P.14-8)
- Set Handset to Automatically Redial Busy Numbers (P.14-9)
- Activate/Cancel Automatic Ringer Reduction
 (P.14-9)
- Enable/Disable Calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone (P.14-9)
- Adjust Earpiece Volume (P.14-9)
- Set Answering Mode (P.14-24)

Favorites

Save phone number and mail address as Favorites for quick calling.

Saving Numbers as Favorites

Save up to 20 frequently used phone numbers and 20 frequently used addresses.

- 1 Tap Phone \rightarrow Favorites
- 2 \ \ / \
- 3 Tap Add
- 4 Search and select Phone Book entry (♦P.2-18)
 - If more than one addresses/phone numbers are saved in one entry, select address/phone number.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Favorites.
- Setting phone number saved as Favorites to secret entry cancels Favorites setting automatically.

Using Favorites

- 1 Tap Phone \rightarrow Favorites
- 2
- 3 Tap beside the designated number
- Alternatively, swipe screen downward to view Favorites.

Sending messages

- 1 Tap Phone \rightarrow *Favorites*
- 2 🗵
- 3 Tap a beside the designated number
- Alternatively, swipe screen downward to view Favorites.

Emergency Numbers

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

940SC Status	Emergency Numbers
Offline Mode activated (�P.1-15)	None
Call Cost Limit exceeded (�P.14-7)	110, 119, 118
Phone Lock activated (�P.11-3)	None
Password Lock activated (◆P.11-4)	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (◆P.11-4)	None
USIM Card cannot be authenticated (�P.11-5)	None
Outgoing Call Barring activated (◆P.3-20)	110, 119, 118

Emergency Location Report

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from handset, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency. Handset transmits location based on base station positioning information.

- Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
- Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to ten kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
- This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented the infrastructure for receiving location information.
- If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
- •No subscription/Communication charges required.

Note

 Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on available network, signal conditions or handset settings.

Answering Machine

Handset records up to three 15-second messages.

Activating & Canceling

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Answering machine
- 2 Under On/Off, On/Off
- •If Answering machine is on, 🖭 appears in Standby.
- Calls appear in Call Log records.

Note

- If handset is off, out-of-range, or in Offline Mode, Answering Machine is unavailable.
 Use Voicemail to handle missed calls.
- Answering Machine requires at least 600 KB of unused handset memory.

Using Answering Machine

Use Answering Machine to record caller messages (�P.3-8).

- 1 Tap Menu → Phone func. → Play answering machine
- 2 Select a message
- •After Answering Machine records a message, 🖪 appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press CLEAR for 1 + seconds to play Answering Machine messages.
- ◆Alternatively, tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Answering machine → Play answering machine.

Deleting Messages

- 1 Tap Menu → Phone func. →
 Play answering machine →
 Tap Delete
- 2 Check message to delete → Tap Delete → Yes
- Message is deleted; *Missed voice call* appears in Call Log.

Black List

Reject incoming calls. Alternatively, reject calls from specified or unknown numbers (\bigcirc P.14-8).

Rejecting Incoming Call

- 1 While handset rings, tap Reject
- Rejected calls appear in Call Log records.
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is unset, while handset rings, tap Forward to reject the call.
 Call is unavailable due to the reasons of other party message appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.

Calls from Specified Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Reject incoming calls
- 2 Set reject number → Under On/Off, On
 - For calls from Black list, caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. Missed Call Notification appears in Standby. Select notification to check missed call.
 - Choose Off to allow calls from specified numbers.
- 3 Black list
- Tap Add → Select an item → Add an entry (�P.14-8)
- To delete saved numbers after ③, tap Delete →
 Check numbers to delete → Tap Delete → Yes.

Calls from Unknown ID Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Reject incoming calls
- 2 Under Unknown, On
 - Choose Off to allow calls from unknown numbers.

Calls from Withheld ID Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Reject incoming calls
- 2 Under Withheld, On
 - Choose Off to allow calls from withheld ID numbers.

Calls from Public Pay Phones

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Reject incoming calls
- 2 Under Payphone, On
 - \bullet Choose \emph{Off} to allow calls from pay phones.

Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Reject incoming calls
- 2 Under *Unavailable, On*
 - Choose *Off* to allow calls from unavailable ID numbers.

Call Log Records

Choose from Received, Dialed, or Ranking to view Call Log. Ranking for outgoing call appears in Ranking. Confirm call type, number, or time. Call Log holds up to 500 incoming calls, 500 outgoing calls and top ten rankings.

Viewing Call Log Records

1 \frown / Tap Phone and Call $log \rightarrow Received/Dialed$



Call Log (Incoming Calls)

2 Select record

•Call Log Record Icons

: Outgoing Voice Call

📳 : Outgoing Video Call

: Incoming Voice Call

: Incoming Video Call

: Missed Voice Call

: Missed Video Call

: Rejected Voice Call

: Rejected Video Call

: Voicemail Notification
: Incoming Call Notification

: Answering Machine

- If Security → Secret mode is set to Hide, names do not appear in Call Log for secret entries.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Menu → Phone func.
 → Call log → Received/Dialed to confirm Call Log.

Viewing Ranking

1 \frown / Tap phone and *Call* $log \rightarrow$ Ranking



Call Log (Ranking)

- 2 Select ranking to view
- If Security → Secret mode is set to Hide, numbers set as Secret mode - On will not appear in Call Log.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Menu \rightarrow *Phone func.* \rightarrow *Call log* \rightarrow *Ranking*.

Calling Call Log Records

- 1 → Received/Dialed/Ranking → Select a log/ranking → beside the log
- Place a call
 - To Place a Voice Call

 Voice call
 - To Place a Video Call

 Video call
 - To Place an International Call

 International call → Select country/
 Select Enter Code and Enter country
 code → Confirm phone number →

 ...
 - **To Call after Editing the Call Number**Copy to dial → Edit number → Call/Tap

 Int. call (�P.3-13)/Tap Video call
- Alternatively, tap \subseteq beside the designated log to place a call.

Deleting Call Log Records

- Tap Delete → Check records to delete → Tap Delete → Yes
- To confirm and delete records one by one, after ①, select record → Confirm and tap Delete → Yes.

Resetting Ranking

- 1 \longrightarrow Ranking
- 2 Tap Reset ranking → Check ranking to reset → Tap Reset → Yes
- ●To reset the entire ranking, after ①, tap Reset ranking \rightarrow *Mark all* \rightarrow Tap Reset \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow *QK* \rightarrow *Yes*.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.3-24

- Viewing Phone Book Entry Details via Call Log
- Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phone Book
- Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

Checking Call Time/Cost

Show charge after call may not be available depending on your contract conditions. Also, Set max cost limit cannot be activated if Show charge after call is not available.

Call settings menu includes items below.

Menu Item	Action
All calls	Confirm or reset approximate total call time/cost.
Last call	Confirm or reset approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm or reset approximate incoming/outgoing data volume.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Call time & cost
- Select item
- To reset item, tap Reset.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost (P.14-6)
- Check Last Call Time/Cost (@P.14-6)
- Check Data Counter (P.14-6)
- Show/Hide Call Time/Cost after Calls (@P.14-6)
- Change Call Cost Currency (P.14-7)
- Set Call Cost Limit (P.14-7)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit (P.14-7)

International Calling

- (1 + seconds)/Tap Phone and Dial → Enter a phone number including area code
- 2 Tap Int. call → Select a country/Select Enter Code and enter country number
- **(3)** Confirm number → *Call*
 - Country code entry is not required to call SoftBank handsets outside of Japan, regardless of country.

Global Roaming

Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand. For information, see SoftBank Mobile Website: (http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/)

Changing Network Mode

Select from available Networks (3G or GSM). Default: Network mode is set automatically.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → International call → Select network
- Select Network mode
 - To Activate Automatically

 Automatic
 - **To Activate Manually** $Manual \rightarrow 3G/GSM, 3G, \text{ or } GSM$
- Network Mode Setting

Automatic:

Mode changes with network availability. 3G:

Use in 3G/UMTS service areas anywhere. *GSM*:

Use in GSM service areas outside Japan.

Default: Automatic

Setting Network

Use SoftBank Mobile 3G network or GSM networks commonly available outside of Japan.

Selecting a Network

Select network (service provider) for the area where handset is used. Manual selection is also available.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → International call → Select operator → Select Auto/Manual
- 2 Select Network mode
 - To Set Automatically

 Automatic
 - To Specify Operator

 Manual → Select an item

Setting Preferred Network

Edit Network list preferentially selected when *Automatic* is set.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → International call → Select operator → Set priority
- Edit Preferred Network list
 - To Select and Add from Network List

 Tap Add → Network list → Select a

 network to insert from Network list
 - To Add Network

Tap Add \rightarrow New Network \rightarrow Tap Country code field \rightarrow Enter country code \rightarrow Tap Network code field \rightarrow Enter Network code \rightarrow Tap Network name field \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow Tap Network type field \rightarrow GSM or 3G \rightarrow Tap Add

- •Added network appears at top of Network list.
- After ①, tap Change order to change the preferred order. Touch and hold a network to move → Drag it to desired location → Tap OK.
- After ①, tap Delete → Select network → Yes to delete network.
- •Items to set in *New Network* are as follows.

Country code: Up to three digits Network code: Up to three digits Network name: Up to 20 words Network type: Select from GSM/3G

Calling Outside Japan

Emergency calls may not be possible outside of Japan depending on network, signal conditions, or handset settings (�P.3-8).

- 1 ← (1 + seconds)/Tap Phone and *Dial* → Enter a phone number including area code → ←
- Place a call
 - To Place a Call to Japan

 To Japan
 - To Place a Call to Visiting Country

 Visiting country
 - To Place a Call to a Country Other than Japan

Other country → Select country to call

- To Place a Call by Entering Number

 Call this number
- If Never show this is checked or Roaming dial assistant is Off, operation above is not required.
- To place a call by directly entering country number, touch and hold ■0 to enter +. Enter country number, phone number excluding the first 0 → Press to dial. To place a call to Italy, include the first 0 if there is one.
- If + and country code is included at beginning of phone number, 2 is not required.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Switch Network Mode (P.14-6)
- Save International Code (P.14-6)
- Add/Change/Delete Country Number (P.14-6)
- Select Network to Access (P.14-6)
- Select Preferred Network from List (P.14-6)
- Add a New Preferred Network (@P.14-6)
- Set Roaming Dial Assistant (P.14-6)
- Retrieve Network Information Manually (TP.14-25)
- Seek the Most Prioritized Network (P.14-25)

Optional Services

Available optional services are as follows.

Service	Description
Voicemail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere. • Set Missed Call Notification to notify missed calls by notification when handset is off or out-of-range (◆P.3-17).
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call Waiting*	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines. Or toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk with up to six parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls.

^{*} This service requires separate subscription.

Note

If Out appears, services are unavailable.
 For landline operation or service details, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http://www.softbank.jp).

Voicemail

Handset forwards Voice Calls to Voicemail Center according to the following conditions:

Forwarding Condition	Description
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call Notification does not appear.
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is outside service area.

Note

- Voicemail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.
- Activating Voicemail cancels Call Forwarding.

Activating Voicemail

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services
 - → Voice mail/Call forwarding
 - → Voice mail On

Select an item

- To Transfer Immediately

 Always (0 sec.)
- To Set Ring Time before Transfer
 No reply (5 to 30 sec.)
- If No reply (5 to 30 sec.) is set, answer call within set ringtime to cancel forwarding, or tap Forwarding to Voicemail Center to forward immediately.

Canceling Voicemail

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services
 - → Voice mail/Call forwarding
 - \rightarrow Deactivate all \rightarrow Yes

Note

• Deactivate all also cancels Call Forwarding.

Listening to Voicemail Message

When a caller saves a Voicemail message, notification appears in Standby and appears at top of Display.



-Indicated by Icons and Messages

When Notification Appears

Tap Notification → 📓 beside the log

- Tap View → Select record to view message detail.
- Close to clear the notification without playing the message.

When Notification Does Not Appear

- \frown (1+seconds) \rightarrow Enter $1416 \rightarrow$
- Tap Menu → Phone func. → Call voice mail → Tap Call
- \bullet To enter numbers, press $\begin{tabular}{c} \end{tabular}$ to show Keypad .
- •If you delete a message you played, addisappears.

Activating Missed Call Notification

Notification appears for missed calls while handset is off or outside service area; or when caller saves message at Voicemail Center while the line is engaged.



2 Follow guidance

- Alternatively, tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → Missed call notif. to activate Missed Call Notification.
- Notification is saved as Call Log record.
- Missed Call Notification is complimentary.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Forward All Calls to Voicemail (Handset Does Not Ring) (P.14-5)
- Forward Unanswered Calls to Voicemail (Specify Ring Time) (P.14-5)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (P.14-5)
- Confirm Current Voicemail/Call Forwarding Settings (P.14-5)
- Listen to Voicemail Message (P.14-5)
- Set Missed Call Notification (P.14-6)

Call Forwarding

Forward incoming calls to a specified number in accordance with the predefined forwarding condition which you can set by call type (Voice Call or Video Call) (�P.3-16).

Note

- Call Forwarding and Voicemail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voicemail.

Activating/Canceling Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand. Specify forwarding number in *Voice/Video call*, *Voice call*, or *Video call*.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → Voice mail/Call forwarding → Call forwarding On/Deactivate all
 - When canceled, confirmation appears.
 Choose Yes to end operation.

Note

Voicemail is also canceled.

- 2 Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call
- 3 Always (0 sec.) or No reply (5 sec.) to No reply (30 sec.)
- 4 Set forwarding number
 - To Use Previous Forwarding Number

 Last number → Select number
 - To Enter from Phone Book

 Phonebook → Search and select entry

 (�P.2-18) → Select number
 - To Enter Number Directly

 Enter number → Enter phone number
- If No reply (5 to 30 sec.) is set, answer call within set ringtime to cancel forwarding, or tap Forwarding to forward immediately.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Activate & Set Forwarding (P.14-5)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (P.14-5)
- Confirm Current Voicemail/Call Forwarding Settings (P.14-5)

Calling

Call Waiting

A separate subscription is required to use this service. For use with Voice Calls only.

Activating/Canceling Call Waiting

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Optional services → Call waiting
- 2 On, Off
- For current status, select Get status after 2.

Accepting a Second Call

If a call arrives during a call, interrupt tone sounds and notice appears. Put first call on hold to answer.

- After interrupt tone sounds, tap Answer (Hold call)/Answer (End call)
 - Alternatively, press
 - To put current call on hold to answer second call, tap Answer (Hold call).
 - To end current call to answer second call, tap Answer (End call).

2 To switch parties, tap Group call func

- 3 Switch party
 - To Switch to Group Call

 Change to group call
 - To Switch Party
 Change to private call
 - To End Selected Call

 End each call → beside the other party to finish talking with
 - To End All Calls

 End all calls
- If one party ends a call with another on hold, tap

 Hold to talk with party on hold again.
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is set and second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding number or Voicemail Center.
- •If forwarding condition is set to *Always*, Call Waiting is unavailable.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Activate/Cancel Call Waiting (P.14-5)
- Confirm Current Call Waiting Settings (TP.14-5)

Conference Call

Talk with up to six parties simultaneously. This service requires separate subscription.

Placing New Call During a Call

Connecting a second call places first one on hold.

- ① During a call, tap Dial → Enter phone number
 - To select from Phone Book, tap Phonebook
 → Search and select entry (◆P.2-18) → Select phone number.
 - To select from Favorites, tap Favorites → Select to call.
- Press \(\simeq \simeq \) /Tap Call
- Calling a third party is only possible with Conference Call (not available if a party is on hold).

Switching Party

- 1 While connected with multiple parties, tap Group call func → Switch
- If connected party ends call in Conference Call, party on hold remains on-hold. To talk with party on hold, tap Hold to cancel hold.

Talking with All Parties

- 1 While connected with multiple parties, tap Group call func → Change to group call
 - To talk with one party again, tap Group call func → Change to private call → (a).
- To end all calls, tap Group call func → Select End all calls.
- •When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.3-24

Ending Selected Call

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice Calls, Video Calls or SMS by conditions listed below.

Item		Description	
Outo	Outgoing call		
	Bar all outgoing calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to all but emergency numbers.	
	Bar all international calls	Disables outgoing international calls and SMS.	
	Bar international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to numbers outside of Japan and the country where you are.	
Incoming call			
	Bar all incoming calls	Blocks all incoming calls and SMS.	
	Bar all roaming calls	Blocks all incoming international calls and SMS.	

- Setting Call Barring requires Network Password (four-digit number specified at subscription).
 Network Password can be changed (◆P.3-20).
- If a call is placed while Call Barring is active, a message appears indicating that Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

Note

- If incorrect Network Password is entered three consecutive times, Call Barring is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access Code. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (�P.15-27).
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active, Bar all outgoing calls and Bar All incoming calls cannot be set (Optional Services override Call Barring settings).

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Bar outgoing/incoming calls/transmissions by type (Voice Calls, Video Calls, SMS).

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Call* settings → Optional services → Call barring
- Select a restriction type
 - For Outgoing Calls Outgoing call → Bar all outgoing calls. Bar all international calls, or Bar international calls
 - For Incoming Calls Incoming call → Bar all incoming calls or Bar all roaming calls
- On or Off
- Enter Network Password → Tap OK

Canceling All Barring

Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Call* settings → Optional services → Call barring
- Cancel all barring
- Enter Network Password → Tap $OK \rightarrow Yes$

Checking Call Barring Status

- Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call $settings \rightarrow Optional services$ → Call barring
- Quantification of the second of the seco calls. All international calls. International calls, All incoming calls, or All roaming calls

Changing Network Password

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Call* settings → Optional services \rightarrow Call barring \rightarrow Set security code
- **Enter current Network** Password in Old field → Tap OK
- Enter new Network Password in New field → Tap OK
- **Enter new Network Password** again in Cnf field → Tap OK

Advanced

3 Settings

- Set Outgoing Call Barring (P.14-5)
- Cancel All Call Barring (TP P.14-5)
- Confirm Current Call Barring Settings (P.14-5)
- Change Network Password (TP P.14-5)

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number.

Showing & Hiding Caller ID

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Call settings → Show my number
- 2 On or Off
- After ①, select *Get status* to confirm current setting.
- Regardless of Show my number setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time you place a call (◆P.3-21).

Advanced

₹ Settings

Show/Hide Your Own Number (P.14-8)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Voice Call

Saving Entered Phone Number to Phone Book

Sending New Message to Entered Number

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number → Tap More → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (�P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤, P.4-7 SMS ⑥)

Showing or Hiding Your Number for a Call

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number including area code → Tap More

- Otherwise, Show my number setting applies.
- Alternatively, press (1 + seconds) → Enter
 186 → Enter phone number → to show
 your number.
- Alternatively, press (1 + seconds) → Enter
 184 → Enter phone number → to hide
 your number.

Setting Mute

During a call, Mute

• During a call, tap *Mute* to switch to a normal call.

Switching to Speakerphone

During a call, Speaker → Yes

 To cancel Speakerphone, tap Speaker again during a call.

Talking in Low Voice

During a call, Whisper

- With Whisper, your voice is amplified on other party's phone.
- During a call, tap Whisper again for normal call.

Switching Headset/Phone

During a call, Headset

Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Searching Phone Book during Call

During a call, tap Phonebook \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-18 Entry Search \bigcirc to \bigcirc)

Searching Favorites during Call

During call, tap Favorites → _____ / ___ → Select target favorite

Using Functions during Call During call, tap More

- **To Send Push Tones**Send DTMF → Enter digits → Tap Send
- To View Call Log Records/Ranking
 Call log → (�P.3-10)

To View Account Details

Account details \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.1-14)

To View Calendar

Calendar → (�P.10-4)

To View Memo
Notepad → (� P.10-13)

To View Message Menu *Messaging* → (�P.4-1)

To View Menu in Yahoo! Keitai Yahoo! Keitai $\rightarrow (\mathfrak{O}P.5-3)$

To View Menu in PC Site Browser PC site browser \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.5-4)

To View Alarm
Alarms \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.10-3)

To Calculate with Calculator Calculator → (�P.10-11)

To Convert Currency/Units

Converter → (♠P.10-12)

To Add Words/Phrases to User's Dictionary

Dictionary → (♠P.2-14)

Video Call

Showing/Hiding Caller ID

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number including area code → Tap More

To Hide Phone Number

Hide my ID → Tap Video call

To Show Phone Number

Show mv ID → Tap Video call

Alternatively, press (1 + seconds) → Enter
 186 → Enter phone number → Tap Video call to
 place a call with your phone number shown.

Alternatively, press (1 + seconds) → Enter
 184 → Enter phone number → Tap Video call to
 place a call with your phone number hidden.

Toggling Sub Camera/External Camera
During Video Call,

Enlarging/Reducing My Image
During Video Call,
→ Adjust size

 Setting Mute

During Video Call, tap Mute or Unmute

Alternatively, during Video Call, tap More →
 Settings → Under Mute my voice, On/Off.

Switching to Speakerphone

During Video Call, tap Speaker On or Speaker Off

- A confirmation appears to set Speaker on?
 Choose Yes to switch to Speakerphone call.
- Alternatively, during Video Call, tap More →
 Settings → Under Speaker, On or Off to toggle
 Speaker/Earpiece.

Putting a Video Call on Hold During Video Call, tap Hold

- Image set in Hold during call is sent while on hold and neither party can hear the other's voice.
- To reconnect the call, tap Retrieve.

Toggling My Image

During Video Call, tap More → My image

To Toggle My Image Camera

To Toggle Alternative Picture

Alternative picture

To Select My Image

Send picture → Picture/Digital camera → Select image to send → Tap OK

 When Memory Card is inserted, files can be selected from Digital Camera folder.

Changing Image Size during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow *Switch screen*

Switch incoming image small and My Image large.

Toggling Incoming Image Pause/Play

During Video Call, tap More → *Pause incoming image* or *Play incoming image*

Transferring Headset/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, tap More → *Transfer to handset* or *Transfer to phone*

Appears when Bluetooth[®]-compatible headset is in use.

Setting Alternative Picture Instead of My Image

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → *Alternative picture*

To Restore Default Image Preset picture → Tap OK

To Select Image from Data Folder Pictures/Digital camera → Select image → Tap OK

• With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from Digital Camera folder.

Adjusting Incoming Video Quality

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → *Incoming video quality* → Select an item

Adjusting Outgoing Video Quality

During Video Call, tap More → Settings → Outgoing video quality → Select an item

Setting on Hold Picture

During Video Call, tap More → Settings → Hold setting → Hold during call or Hold answer

To Restore Default Image Preset picture → Tap OK

To Select Image from Data Folder Pictures/Digital camera → Select image → Tap OK

 With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from Digital Camera folder.

Adjusting Video Call Backlight Setting

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Under *Backlight*, *On* or *Off*

 Set Backlight during Video Call. When Off is set, Display becomes dim.

Adjusting Call Retry Setting

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → *Retry with* → Select an item

Answering Video Call from Specified Party Automatically

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Auto answer* \rightarrow Under *On/Off, On* or *Off*

 When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Adding Auto Answer List

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Auto answer* \rightarrow *Auto answer list* \rightarrow Tap Add

To Select from Phone Book

Phonebook → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Search and select entry (♠P.2-18)

To Select from Call Log

Call log → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Received/Dialed/Ranking → Select a log

To Enter Phone Number Directly

Direct input → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Enter phone number

 When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Auto answer \rightarrow Auto answer list \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check phone number to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

Showing/Hiding My Image

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Show my image*, *On* or *Off*

 Setting is not applied to current Video Call. Applied effective from next Video Call.

Sending Push Tones

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow Send DTMF \rightarrow Enter digits \rightarrow Tap Send

 To search Phone Book, select Send DTMF and then tap Search to search and select Phone Book entry → Tap Send(�P.2-18). Creating & Saving Text Memo in Video Call

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow Memo \rightarrow Enter text memo \rightarrow Tap Category field \rightarrow Select category \rightarrow Tap Save

Searching Phone Book during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow *Phonebook* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-18 Entry Search \bigcirc)

Sending Message during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More \rightarrow *Create message* \rightarrow *S! Mail* or *SMS* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc)

Call Log Records

Messaging from Call Log Records

ightharpoonup
ig

Viewing Phone Book Entry Details via Call Log

→ Received/Dialed/Ranking → Select a record → Tap View phonebook

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phone Book

→ Received/Dialed/Ranking → Tap Add to phonebook → (�P.2-18 Saving Entries from Call Log Records ③)

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup Received/Dialed/Ranking
ightharpoonup Select a record ightharpoonup Tap Add to black list <math>
ightharpoonup Yes

Conference Call

Ending Selected Call

During Conference Call, tap Group call func

→ End each call →

to disconnect

Putting All Calls on Hold

During Conference Call, tap Group call func → *Hold all*

 To cancel on-hold, tap Group call func and select Retrieve.

Messaging

Messaging Basics4-2
S! Mail & SMS
Sending & Receiving Messages
Managing Messages4-3
Customizing Mail Address 4-4
Creating/Sending Messages 4-4
S! Mail
SMS4-7
Using Templates4-8
Incoming Messages 4-8
Viewing New Messages4-8
Retrieving Messages Manually
Viewing from Message List
Replying to Received Messages
Forwarding Received Messages
Using Messages 4-12
Using Message Information
Locking/Unlocking Messages 4-14
Deleting Messages or Templates
Saving Attached Files to Data Folder
Using Mail Group4-14
Managing Messages 4-15
Creating Folders
Moving Messages
Sorting Messages
Sorting Spam 4-16



Advanced Settings	4-17
Sending S! Mail	
Sending SMS	4-20
Received Messages	4-22
Using/Managing Messages	4-22
Managing Folders	4-26

Messaging Basics

This handset supports S! Mail and SMS messaging. Learn how to send and manage text messages.

S! Mail & SMS

Use S! Mail to exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other E-mail compatible handsets, PCs and other mobile devices. Send Graphic Mail and media files via S! Mail.

Note

S! Mail requires separate subscription.

Use SMS to exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets.

		S! Mail ¹	SMS	
	Address	0	0	
Entry Items	Subject	0	×	
ltems	Attachment	0	×	
	Text	0	0	
Character Limit		Up to 15,000 double-byte 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB) ²	Up to 70 single-/ double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric ³	
Recipient		SoftBank mobile phones, other E-mail compatible mobile phones, PCs	SoftBank handset	
Contents		Long text message, image, sound, Graphic Mail, and Feeling Mail ⁴	Short text message Transmit text, pictograms, and symbols, etc.	

- 1 Maximum message size is 1 MB including address, subject, message text, attachments, etc. (This applies to replay and forward S! Mail messages). Change the limit for sending message size to 300 KB.
- 2 Limit for text entry varies with attachment size etc.
- 3 When *Char-code* is set to *GSM 7 bit* (♠P.14-13).
- 4 Exchange Feeling Mail only with compatible handsets.

Note

- Maximum message size is increased to 1 MB. Sending messages might incur high Packet Communication charges depending on message size and your subscription.
- Messages created on handset may not appear on other party's handset correctly.
- Received Hangul messages are viewable.
- Hangul may be deleted from sent message or appear as spaces on other party's handset.
- Send message contains Hangul via E-mail;
 Hangul may be deleted even if message are sent to Hangul compatible mobile phone.

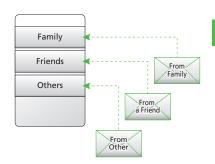
Sending & Receiving Messages

Messages are sent/received over the network as shown below.





Managing Messages



Customizing Mail Address

Change the alphanumerics before @ of mail address (account name).

Default: Account name consists of random alphanumerics.

For details, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http:// mb.softbank.jp/en/).

Customizing mail address may help reduce spam.

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Custom mail address
- 2 Select *English* \rightarrow follow onscreen instructions
 - After customizing mail address. SoftBank sends a confirmation message.
- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received* $msg. \rightarrow Select a folder$ → Select message from Information $\rightarrow Ves$

Creating/Sending Messages

Drafts and sent messages are saved in different folders

Sent messages appear in Sent msg. and drafts in Drafts

Create and send S! Mail/SMS, Graphic Mail, and attach files.

S! Mail

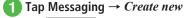
Sending S! Mail to a Phone Book entry is described.

Note

- Sending messages might incur high Packet Communication charges depending on message size and your subscription. Set Max creation size to 300KB to limit message size (€P.14-12).
- Messages containing Hangul characters or attachments with Hangul characters are converted to UTF-8 character encoding. Character encoding remains as UTF-8 even if Hangul characters are deleted from message. If character encoding is UTF-8, Graphic Mail will be unavailable.
- If Hangul characters are entered in a message containing Japanese characters, Japanese characters in message are converted to UTF-8 character encoding, and character count of Japanese characters increases by 1.5 times. If character count exceeds limit, Hangul characters cannot be entered.

Note

- Hangul characters are viewable only when other party uses Hangul-compatible mobile phone.
- Enter phone number in Recipient to send S! mail containing Hangul characters. If mail address is entered, Hangul characters will not be viewable.
- For Graphic Mail:
- If text to be inserted (Notepad, Phone Book etc.) contains Hangul characters, Hangul characters will be deleted.
- If attachment file name is Hangul, file name will be converted to nonamexx (xx is number).
- If part of attachment file name is Hangul, Hangul will be deleted.





S! Mail Creation Window

- Tap Recipient field
- *From phonebook* \rightarrow Search and select Phone Book entry (♦P.2-18 Entry Search <a>(<a>)
 - Tap Multiple selection to select multiple addresses from Phone Book at once.

- Select number or address
- Tap Subject field → Enter subject
- 6 Tap Attach field, when attaching files to message (�P.4-5)
- Tap Enter Text field → Enter text
- Tap Send
- Send S! Mail from From history/From mail group/Enter number/Enter address (P.4-17).
- Alternatively, in Standby, touch and hold Messaging to open Message creation window.
- Enter SoftBank handset numbers or mail addresses in Recipient field. Add up to 20 recipients.
- •If \(\sigma_{\text{LEAR}}\) or \(\sigma_{\text{T}}\) is pressed with address. subject or text entered or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose Yes to exit. To save to Draft after CLEAR is pressed, tap Save.
- Sent message is saved in Sent msg. or Unsent msg. If Auto delete (♠P.14-11) is On (Except protected) and memory is full, the oldest sent messages are deleted automatically (except protected ones) to make room for new ones. If Unsent msg. is full or messages cannot be deleted automatically, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.
- During message creation, message size appears next to Create msg in Message creation window.

Attaching Files

Attach media files directly, or Phone Book/Calendar /Tasks entries or Account Details as vCard or vCalendar files.

Send messages up to 1 MB (including address, subject and text). If message size exceeds Max creation size, attached image size is changed automatically. Changing its size temporarily is available (SP.4-19). Attach up to 20 files per S! Mail message.

- Tap Messaging → Create *new* → Tap Attach field
- Attach file
 - To Attach Data Folder Files Data Folder \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file
 - To Attach Images Captured by Camera Take photo → Capture still image
 - To Attach Video Recorded by Camera Record video → Record video
 - To Attach Phone Book Entries (vCard) Phonebook details → Search and check entry (�P.2-18) → Tap Add
 - To Attach Calendar/Tasks Entries (vCalendar)

Calendar item → Tap pulldown menu → Schedule or Tasks → Check an entry → Tap Add

To Attach Memo Saved as VNT Format

Notepad → Check file → Tap Add

To Attach Account Details

Account details → Tap Add

- ●To add files, tap Attach field → Add file, and repeat 2.
- When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list.
- : Image
- Sound
- · Video
- vCalendar Document
- : vCard
 - Other

Note

- Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient handset status. For supported file types, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http://www.softbank.jp).
- When attaching video, select a file recorded in Video (P.7-10). If file is incompatible, a warning appears.

Creating Graphic Mail

Example:

- Changing font size and background color.
- Inserting image and pictograms in Data Folder.
- Scrolling characters to left and right.
- For other items, see "Sending S! Mail" (P.4-17).
- Tap Messaging → *Create new* → Tap Enter Text field
- Tap More → *Graphic Mail* (Hold: Send Key)



Graphic Mail Creation Window

- $Size \rightarrow Large, Standard, or$ Small → Fnter text
 - To continue, tap Add art.
- Tap Add art $\rightarrow BG color$
- 5 Select a background color

- \bigcirc Tap Add art → *Image*
- *Pictures* → Select a file
 - To insert Mail Art, select Mail Art.
 - If Memory Card is inserted, select from Digital Camera folder
 - To capture image to insert, select *Camera*.
 - If Memory Card is inserted, select Pictures and tap li to select a Memory Card file.
- 8 Tap Add art $\rightarrow My$ Pict \rightarrow Select a pictogram
- ¶ Tap Add art → Tap Select area → Tap start character to modify → Tap Start point → Tap end character to modify \rightarrow Tap End point \rightarrow Effect
- 1 Scroll
- 1 Right to left
- •In Graphic Mail creation window, tap Undo to reverse most recent change.
- In Graphic Mail creation window, tap Cancel → Yes to cancel all graphic settings and return to text entry window.
- Handwriting is not available.
- Message with Hangul characters cannot be converted to Graphic Mail.

• For Graphic Mail, Hangul characters are not available. If text to be inserted (Notepad. Phone Book etc.) contains Hangul characters, Hangul characters will be deleted.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.4-17

- Viewing History Details
- Deleting Messaging History Records
- Inserting Information into S! Mail Messages
- Moving Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Setting Message Actions
- Using Template to Create S! Mail
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Sending S! Mail Automatically within Signal Area
- Setting Delivery Time
- Deleting All Text
- Viewing Graphic Mail
- Saving Graphic Mail as Template

₹ Settings

- Change Message Text Font Size (P.14-4)
- Request/Cancel Delivery Report (P.14-10)
- Select Reply Setting (P.14-10)
- Set "Reply to" Address (P.14-10)
- Show/Hide Transmission Progress Bar (P.14-10)
- Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Sent Messages When Sent Memory is Full (P.14-11)
- Set Message Sending Priority (P.14-12)
- Set Max Creation Size (P.14-12)
- Insert/Hide Signature (P.14-13)
- Edit Signature (P.14-13)

SMS

Sending SMS to a Phone Book entry is described.

1 Tap Messaging → Create new SMS



SMS Creation Window

- Tap Recipient field
- 3 From phonebook → Search and select entry (�P.2-18 Entry Search ③)
- 4 Select a phone number
- 5 Tap Enter Text field → Enter text
- 6 Tap Send

- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Add up to 20 Recipients.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (♠ P.4-2), S!
 Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose
 Yes to switch to S! Mail.
 When Hangul text is included. Hangul characters.

When Hangul text is included, Hangul characters will be converted to UTF-8 character encoding.

●Sent message is saved in Sent msg. or Unsent msg. If Auto delete (●P.14-11) is On (Except protected) and memory is full, the oldest sent messages are deleted automatically (except protected ones) to make room for new ones. If Unsent msg. is full or messages cannot be deleted automatically, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.

Advanced

N. Advanced Settings P.4-20

- Viewing History Details
- Deleting Messaging History Records
- Inserting Information into SMS
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Deleting All Text
- Sending SMS Automatically within Signal Area
- Setting Delivery Time
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

3 Settings

- Request/Cancel Delivery Report (TPP.14-10)
- Show/Hide Transmission Progress Bar (P.14-10)
- Set Mail Service Center Message Expiry Time (TPP.14-13)
- Set Message Center Number (P.14-13)
- Change Character Code (P.14-13)

Using Templates

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Templates* \rightarrow Select templates → Tap Mail
- 2 Send message (♦P.4-4 S! Mail 2 to 8)

Incoming Messages

Retrieve complete S! Mail messages automatically or manually.

Auto download: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages and attachments to handset. Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends ST Mail Notice. Notice appears in Standby. Open Received msg. folder to view message. Retrieve complete message as required. Learn how to receive, confirm. reply to, or forward text messages.

Note

- Receiving messages might incur high Packet Communication charges depending on message size and your subscription. Set receiving options to *Manual retrieval* to receive part of message (SP.14-12). Select message to receive whole message.
- Forwarding/reusing messages containing Hangul characters will convert to UTF-8 character encoding. Character encoding remains as UTF-8 even if Hangul characters are deleted from message. If character encoding is UTF-8. Graphic Mail will be unavailable.

Viewing New Messages

For new messages, a notice, including the number of messages received, appears in Standby.

• Default: Handset retrieves complete S! Mail messages, including attachments. Depending on your contract, retrieval may incur charges. Set Manual Retrieval (P.4-9).



Information Window (Received Messages)

Tap notification



Message Window (S! Mail)

• If 3D Pictograms confirmation appears, select Always, Only unread, or Disable.

•3D Pictograms

When viewing new/unread messages, message text appears in 3D animation.

- If 3D Pictograms \rightarrow 3D Pict. Auto play (\bigcirc P.14-10) is set to something other than Disable, 3D animation appears. After animation stops or Stop is tapped, Message window appears. Use menu options in Message window.
- •When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.
- If messages are received out of Standby, sender numbers or mail addresses (names if saved in Phone Book), etc. scroll across Display top.
 Afterward papears (◆P.1-3, P.14-10).
- ●When a Delivery Report arrives, 🔄 flashes disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.
- Received message is saved in Received msg. If Auto delete (●P.14-11) is On (Except protected) / On (Only read) and memory is full, messages are automatically deleted the oldest first to make room for new ones. However, if Auto delete is On (Except protected), protected messages are not deleted. If messages cannot be deleted automatically, confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

Note

- Default: Receiving options → Roaming auto settings is set to Auto DL (All)
 Handset automatically retrieves complete S! Mail messages, including attachments.
 Outside Japan, this setting may incur high Packet Communications charges.
- Set Home auto settings to Manual retrieval to receive part of message (P.14-12).
 Select message to receive whole message.

Retrieving Messages Manually

When *Receiving options* → *Home auto settings* (�P.14-12) is set to *Manual retrieval*, 5! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to handset as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

- 1 Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg.
- Select a folder → Select a notification



Retrieve mail

Message List Indicators

Unread Message Notification

Priority high

: Priority standard

🖳 : Priority low

Read Message Notification

riority high

: Priority standard

🔄 : Priority low

Viewing from Message List

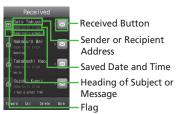
View messages from Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., or Unsent msg.

Tap Messaging → Received
 msg., Sent msg. or Unsent msg.
 → Select a folder as required



Mail Folder List Window (Received Message)

Select a message



Message List Window (Received Messages)

- Secret folders do not appear when Security → Secret mode is set to Hide. To show secret folders, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.
- •To scroll or highlight items such as phone numbers in a message, tap 4 / 4 / 7 / 1. Tap Select to select the highlighted item.
- ●In Message window, tap 4 / ▶ or swipe to right/left for next/previous message.
- No Messages appears, when there are no messages in Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., and Unsent msg. folders.

Message List

These indicators appear in message lists.

Received Message Indicators

Unread S! Mail



Priority high



: Priority standard



Priority low



: Media file inserted

Read St Mail



Priority high



Representation of the second o



: Media file inserted

Unread Message Notification

Priority high

: Priority standard

?: Priority low

Read Message Notification

: Priority high

S : Priority standard

Priority low

Unread SMS

Saved to Phone

: USIM Card SMS



saved to Phone



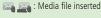
: USIM Card SMS

Receiving

S! Mail

Draft Message Indicators S! Mail

S! Mail



SMS

SMS:

Unsent Message Indicators

S! Mail

: S! Mail

: Media file inserted

: Resending

SMS

: SMS

: USIM Card SMS

Sent Message Indicators

S! Mail

S! Mail

: Media file inserted

SMS

: SMS

: USIM Card SMS

Delivery Report

: Unread S! Mail

: Unread SMS

 If Security → Secret mode is set to Hide and, in Phone Book, Secret mode is set to On, only number or address appears for sent/received messages to/from secret entries.

Replying to Received Messages

- 1 Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg.
- 2 Select a folder → Tap
 beside message to replay
- 3 Create a message (�P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤)
- Reuse received message to reply (◆P.14-10).
- ullet Re: appears in Subject field automatically.
- •To send to all recipient, select *Reply* to all at 2.
- To reply with a preset template (Quick reply setting
 → P.4-22), touch and hold Reply distributed a select a
 template.

Forwarding Received Messages

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. → Select a folder
- Select a message → Tap Forward
- 3 Create a message (♦P.4-4 S! Mail ②)
- Fw: appears in Subject field automatically.
- To forward received SMS, select S! Mail or SMS.
- Alternatively, tap Messaging → Received
 msg. → Select a folder → Tap Forward → Tap
 message to forward.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.4-22

- Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail
- Calling Sender
- Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

3 Settings

- Change Ouick Reply Message (TP P.14-10)
- Set Received Message Notice Content/Hide Notice (CFP.14-10)
- Select Secret Folder Message Notice Setting (P.14-10)
- Adjust 3D Pictograms Auto Play Setting (P.14-10)
- Select 3D Pictograms Color Settings (P.14-11)
- Select 3D Pictograms Display Speed (P.14-11)
- Link External Light to Incoming Feeling Mail (@P.14-11)
- Link External Light Color to Incoming Feeling Mail (CFP.14-11)
- Link Vibration to Incoming Feeling Mail (@P.14-11)
- Set Whether to Sound Handset When Feeling Mail Arrives (@P.14-11)
- Link Ringtone to Incoming Feeling Mail (CFP.14-11)
- Set Feeling Mail Ringtone Duration (P.14-11)
- Change Font Size (P.14-11)
- Change Scroll Unit (P.14-11)
- Show/Hide Navigation Bar (P.14-11)
- Set S! Mail Receiving Options (P.14-12)
- Set S! Mail Receiving Options during Roaming (@P.14-12)
- Set Attached Image Appearance (P.14-13)
- Set Attached Image Auto Playback (P.14-13)
- Set Attached Sound Auto Playback (P.14-13)

Using Messages

Handset automatically sorts messages into five folders by type.

Folder	Message Type
Received msg.	Received messages are saved
Drafts	Incomplete messages are saved
Templates	Created templates are saved
Sent msg.	Sent messages are saved
Unsent msg.	Failed/Canceled/Outgoing messages are saved

Using Message Information

In Message creation window or notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or mail address to save to Phone Book, place a call, send message, etc.

Saving to Phone Book

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received* $msg. \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow$ Select a message → Select phone number, mail address, or URL \rightarrow *Add to phonebook*
- Save a number to Phone Book
 - To Save as a New Entry $New \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-17 \text{ Creating New Entries } \bigcirc)$
 - To Update Existing Entry

 $Update \rightarrow Search and select entry (P.2-18)$ → Save a number to Phone Book (�P.2-17)

Saving to Bookmark

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. → Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → Add to bookmark
- Enter a title

Using Page Links

Use sender's address, phone number, mail address, or URL embedded in message text or Received message window.

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. → Select a folder → Select a message
- Use linked information
 - To Place a Voice Call
 Select a phone number → Voice call
 - To Place a Video Call
 Select a phone number → Video call
 - To Edit a Number before Call
 Select a phone number → Edit before call
 - To Send a Message
 Select a phone number or an mail address
 → (♠P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤, P.4-7 SMS ⑥)
 - To Access the Internet
 Select URL \rightarrow Go to URL \rightarrow Yes
- To message to a phone number, select S! Mail or SMS then create message.
- Alternatively, tap items directly to select.

Using Location Information

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. → Select a folder → Select a message
- Use linked information
 - To Set to Destination

Select location information \rightarrow *Set to destination* \rightarrow If confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To Save to My Locations

 Select location information → Save to my location → Name → Enter name →

 Tap Save
- To View Map via Internet

 Select location information → Go to URL

 → Yes

Locking/Unlocking Messages

Lock a message or all messages in a folder. When deleting a locked message, confirmation appears. Cancel lock to delete.

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received* msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent $msg...or\ Unsent\ msg. \rightarrow Select$ folder as required
- Tap Lock/Unlock (for some windows, tap More $\rightarrow Lock/$ $Unlock) \rightarrow Tap messages to$ Lock or Unlock → Tap OK

Deleting Messages or Templates

Deleting Messages

Delete specified messages or all messages in message folder.

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required
- Tap Delete (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow *Delete*) \rightarrow Check message to delete → Tap Delete $\rightarrow Yes$

Deleting Templates

Delete specified templates or all saved templates.

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Templates*
- 2 Tap Delete → Check template → Tap Delete → Yes
- •If protected messages or templates are included in the specified messages, a confirmation appears. Choose Except protected to delete unprotected templates and choose Include all to delete all.

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

- Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received msg.* or Sent msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message
- Tap Save (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow Save \rightarrow Items) \rightarrow Check files to save → Tap Save
 - If files with same name exist, notification appears. Tap $OK \rightarrow Edit$ file name.

Using Mail Group

Use Mail Group to send messages at once.

Creating Mail Group

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Phone func.* \rightarrow $Mail\ group \rightarrow Tap\ Add$
- Enter group name → Tap OK → Select Mail name → Tap bbA
- Search and select Phone Book entry (€P.2-18)

Sending Message to Mail Group

- 1 Tap Menu → *Phone func.* → *Mail group*
- Select Mail Group → Tap Create S! Mail → Create message (�P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤)
- Alternatively, tap Messaging → Create new
 → Select Mail Group.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.4-22

- Changing Mail Group Name
- Deleting Mail Group
- Deleting Member in Mail Group
- Showing 3D Pictograms
- Adding Sender to Phone Book
- Viewing Sender and Recipient
- Copying Message Content
- Deleting Message
- Setting Character Code
- Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
- Viewing Mail/Template Details
- Sorting Messages
- Locking/Unlocking Message/Template
- Changing Messages to Read/Unread

- Moving SMS Message to Handset/USIM Card
- Sending Draft Message
- Editing & Sending Sent Messages
- Viewing Delivery Report
- Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
- Resending Unsent Messages
- Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message
- Sending Saved Template via S! Mail
- Moving Template
- Copying Template
- Sending Template
- Sorting Template
- Managing Template
- Setting Secret to Templates Folder
- Updating Mail List
- Forwarding Server Mail
- Deleting Mail List Messages

₹ Settings

- Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Received Messages
 When Received Memory is Full (P.14-11)
- Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Sent Messages When Sent Memory is Full (P.14-11)

Managing Messages

Create folders in *Received msg.* and *Sent msg.*, and set rules to each folder to sort messages automatically.

Set security to created folders. Received msg. and Sent msg. folder cannot be deleted and the settings cannot be changed.

In received message lists, tap flag to turn on/off the flag. Messages can be sorted by flag status.

Creating Folders

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. or Sent msg.
- 2 Tap Add new folder
- **3** Edit folder name
 - New folder appears at bottom of list.
 - Even if folders with same name exist, notification does not appear.
- 4 If confirmation appears, Yes/No
 - If *Yes*, see (♦P.4-16 Sorting Messages ③)

Moving Messages

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. or Sent msg. → Select a folder as required
- 2 Tap More → Move to folder
 → Check message to move →
 Tap Move to folder
- Select a destination folder
- Received messages are saved to Received msg. folder, and sent messages are saved to Sent msg. folder. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, operate and select original folder.

Sorting Messages

Automatically sort sent/received messages to specified folder by number or address, etc. Sort messages by S! Mail subject or SMS text. Set up to 20 rules per folder.

- 1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. or Sent msg.
- 2 Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to move to
 - To add a sorting rule for selected folder, tap Add rule.
- 3 Set sorting rule
 - To Select Phone Number/Mail Address from Phone Book

Sender (for some windows, Recipient) → From phonebook → Search and select entry (�P.2-18) → Select phone number or mail address

To Select Phone Number/Mail Address from History

Sender (for some windows, Recipient) →
From history → Tap pulldown menu →
Received or Sent → Select a history

To Select Phone Number/Mail Address from Group in Phone Book

Sender (for some windows, **Recipient**) → **From group** → **Select** a group

 Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

To Enter Phone Number/Mail Address Directly

Sender or Sender(Partial match)
(for some windows, Recipient or
Recipient(Partial match)) → (Enter
number or Enter address When Sender
(for some windows, Recipient) is selected)
→ Enter phone number or mail address

To Select a Rule from Text

Subject → Enter text to set as a rule

4 Tap OK

Sorting Spam

Messages from unknown mobile address are allotted to *Spam folder* without notice.

- 1 Tap Messaging → Settings → Universal settings → Antispam measures
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
 - To Sort Unknown Address as Spam

 Unregistered → On
 - To Sort Message with Spam Filter

 Spam filter → On → Spam filter →

 Tap Edit → (If address already exists in the list, tap Add filter) → Sender/

 Sender(Partial match)/Subject

To Add Address to Permitted List

Permitted list → On → Permitted list → Tap Edit → (If address already exists, tap Add filter) → Sender/Sender(Partial match)/Subject

 Available only when Spam filter/ Unregistered is On.

Advanced

N. Advanced Settings P.4-26

- Changing Folder Name
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Deleting Folders
- Viewing Message or Folder Details
- Deleting Sorting Rules

3 Settings

- Change Sent Message View (P.14-11)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Sending S! Mail

Specifying Recipient without Phone Book In S! Mail creation window, tap Recipient field

- To Enter Address from History Records From history \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow Sent or Received → Select a record
- To Select from Mail Group From mail group → Select Mail Group
 - To Enter Phone Number Directly Enter number → Enter phone number
- To Enter Mail Address Directly Enter address → Enter mail address

Adding Address

In S! Mail creation window, tap Recipient field → Tap Add recipient

To Select from Phone Book

From phonebook → Search and select entry (♠P.2-18) → Select phone number or mail address

- To Enter Address from History Records From history → Tap pulldown menu → Sent or Received → Select a record
- To Select from Mail Group From mail group → Select Mail Group
- To Enter Phone Number Enter number → Enter phone number

To Enter Mail Address

Enter address → Enter mail address

• The number of addresses appears next to the Recipient field **1** in S! Mail creation window.

Viewing History Details

In S! Mail creation window, tap Recipient field From history \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow Sent or Received → Tap View → Select a record to view

Deleting Messaging History Records

In S! Mail creation window, tap Recipient field → From history → Tap pulldown menu → Sent or Received → Tap Delete

To Delete a Record

Select an address → Tap Delete → Yes

To Delete All Records Mark all → Tap Delete → Yes

Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc

In S! Mail creation window, tap Recipient field → Tap an address to change → Select an item

Deleting Address

In S! Mail creation window, tap Recipient field → Tap Remove

- To Delete a Recipient Select a recipient → Tap Remove → Yes
- To Delete All Recipients

Viewing Attached File

In S! Mail creation window, tap Attach field

→ Select a file to view

Removing Attached File

In S! Mail creation window, tap Attach field

→ Tap Remove

- To Remove an Attached File
 Select a file → Tap Remove → Yes
- To Remove All Attached Files

 $Mark \ all \rightarrow$ Tap Remove → Yes

Inserting Information into S! Mail Messages While creating message in S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Insert*

- To Insert Notepad

 Notepad → Select an item
- To Insert Location Information

 Location info → Current location/From my locations/From location logs (�P.10-8)
 - In the following cases location information cannot be inserted.
 - Message attached JPEG file
 - Images inserted using Graphic Mail
- To Insert Barcode

 Bar code reader → (�P.10-14 Barcode Reader ②)
- To Insert Signature
 Signature
- To Insert Phone Number from Phone Book

 Phonebook → Search and select entry (�P.2-18) →

 Select an item

To Insert Account Details

Account details → Select an item

- To Insert a Part of Mail Address

 Quick address list → Select an item
- For Graphic Mail, Hangul characters are not available. If text to be inserted (Notepad, Phone Book etc.) contains Hangul characters, Hangul characters will be deleted.

Moving Cursor to Top/End of Text

While creating message, in S! Mail creation window tap More \rightarrow *Cursor position* \rightarrow Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

While creating message in S! Mail creation window, tap More \rightarrow *Add to dictionary* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-14 Saving to User's Dictionary \bigcirc 2)

Setting Conversion

While creating message in S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Conversion*

- To Activate/Cancel Prediction
 Under Prediction, On or Off
- To Activate/Cancel Learning
 Under Learning, On or Off
- To Reset Learning

 Reset learning → Enter Phone Password →

 Tap OK → Yes
- To Clear Records of Pictograms/Symbols Clear history $\rightarrow Yes$
- To Change Cursor Movement Speed

 Auto cursor → Off|Slow|Fast

Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window, tap Save → *To Drafts*

 Only messages with recipient, subject, or text entered, or file attached can be saved.

Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Feeling settings* → Select a Feeling → Select pictogram

Resetting Feeling Setting

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Reset feeling*

Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Action settings*

- To Set Whether to Delete Automatically after the Other Party Reads the Message Under Set auto delete, On or Off
- To Set Reply Request
 Under Reply request, On or Off
 - ●When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Reply request* to edit a message.
- To Restrict Message Forwarding
 Under Forward NG, On or Off
 - When On is set, select Edit message from Forward NG to edit a message.
- To Restrict Message Deletion
 Under Delete NG, On or Off
 - ●When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Delete NG* to edit a message.

To Restrict Message Access with an Open Question

Quiz → Quiz setting → Open question →
Question → Enter question → Answer → Enter
answer → Message (Correct) → Enter message when
answer is correct → Message (Incorrect) → Enter
message when answer is incorrect → Tap OK

■To edit question, tap Edit question.

To Restrict Message Access with a Multiple Choice Question

Quiz → Quiz setting → Multiple choice question → Question → Enter question → Answer → Select correct number - Select Example1 to 4 field to enter choices → Message (Correct) → Enter message when answer is correct → Message (Incorrect) → Enter message when answer is incorrect → Tap OK

- To edit question, tap Edit question.
- When Action settings are set, the recipient's action can be set.

Changing Maximum Size of Message

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → Sending options → Max creation size → 1MB / 300KB

- Tap Messaging → Settings → S! Mail settings
 → Sending options → Max creation size to
 view the size(♥P.14-12).
- If image files exceeding specified sizes are attached, the image file will be automatically resized.
- When the setting is changed to 300KB while a message is being created, and an image file exceeding 300KB is attached, a message will appear informing the user that changes cannot be made until the attached file is deleted.

Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings \rightarrow Sending options \rightarrow Under Delivery report, On or Off

 Set On to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from the Mail Server to the other party. Set this option to message being created.

Setting Reply Settings

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings \rightarrow Sending options \rightarrow Under Reply settings, On or Off

Set the address in "Reply to" address (♠P.14-10).

Setting Message Priority

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings \rightarrow **Sending options** \rightarrow **Priority** \rightarrow Select an item

Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Sending options** → **Remote Fwd action** → Select an item

 This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (P.4-26).

Using Template to Create S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Launch template* → Select a template

 If you are already using a template, you are prompted to discard already made modifications.
 Choose Yes to discard them and set up a new template. Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Show*3D Pictograms

Sending S! Mail Automatically within Signal Area In S! Mail creation window, tap More → Send Reservation → Within network → Yes

Setting Delivery Time

In S! Mail creation window, tap More \rightarrow Send Reservation \rightarrow Date & time \rightarrow Reserved date \rightarrow Enter reserved date \rightarrow Enter reserved time \rightarrow OK \rightarrow Yes

Deleting All Text

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Changing Text Color

In Graphic Mail creation window, $Color \rightarrow$ Select a color \rightarrow Enter text

Blinking Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Effect* \rightarrow *Blink* \rightarrow *On* \rightarrow Enter text

 To enter normal text subsequently, Effect → Blink → Off → Enter text.

Aligning Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, $Effect \rightarrow Align \rightarrow Select$ an item \rightarrow Enter text

Inserting BGM/Flash®/Line

In Graphic Mail creation window, Insert

- To Insert BGM from Data Folder $BGM \rightarrow Ring \ songs \cdot tones \ or \ Music \rightarrow$ Select a file
- To Record BGM to Insert BGM → Record sound → (P.10-13 Recording Sound 2)
- To Insert Flash® Flash → Select a file
- To Insert Line Line

Canceling Inserted BGM

In Graphic Mail creation window with BGM, Insert → BGM cancel

Changing Entered Text Color/Size/Effect

In Graphic Mail creation window with text entered, tap Select area → Tap start character to modify → Tap Start point → Tap end character to modify → Tap End point

- To Change Font Color Color → Select a color
- To Change Font Size Size → Select an item
- To Change Effect Effect → Select an effect → Select an item
- To Cancel These Modifications Undo

Viewing Graphic Mail

In Graphic Mail creation window with text, tap More → Preview

Saving Graphic Mail as Template

In S! Mail creation window, tap Save $\rightarrow As$ template → Enter file name

Available only when text is decorated (♠P.4-6).

Sending SMS

Specifying Recipient without Phone Book In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field

- To Enter from History Records From history \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow Sent
- or *Received* → Select a log To Enter Recipient Phone Number Enter number → Enter phone number
- To Select from Mail Group From mail group → Select Mail Group

Adding Recipient

In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field → Tap Add recipients

- To Select from Phone Book From phonebook → Search and select entry (♠P.2-18) → Select phone number
- To Enter from History Records From history → Tap pulldown menu → Sent or *Received* → Select a log
- To Select from Mail Group From mail group → Select Mail Group
- To Enter Phone Number Enter number → Enter phone number
- The number of recipients appears next to the Recipient field \(\bigset\) in the SMS creation window.

Viewing History Details

In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field → From history → Tap pulldown menu → Sent or Received → Tap View → Select a log to view

Deleting Messaging History Records

In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field \rightarrow *From history* \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow *Sent* or *Received* \rightarrow Tap Delete

To Delete a Record

Select an address → Tap Delete → Yes

To Delete All Records

Mark all → Tap Delete → Yes

Deleting Recipient

In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field → Tap Remove

To Delete a Recipient

Select a recipient → Tap Remove → Yes

To Delete All Recipients

Mark all \rightarrow Tap Remove \rightarrow Yes

Inserting Information into SMS

While creating message, in SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow *Insert*

To Insert Notepad

Notepad → Select an item

To Insert Location Information

Location info → Current location/From my locations/From location logs (�P.10-22)

To Insert Barcode

Bar code reader \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.10-14 Barcode Reader \bigcirc 2)

To Insert Signature

Signature

To Insert Phone Number from Phone Book

Phonebook → Search and select entry (�P.2-18) → Select an item

To Insert Account Details

Account details → Select an item

To Insert a Part of Address

Quick address list → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

While creating message, in SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow *Add to dictionary* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-14 Saving to User's Dictionary \bigcirc 2)

Setting Conversion

While creating message, in SMS creation window, tap More → *Conversion*

To Activate/Cancel Prediction

Under *Prediction*, *On* or *Off*

To Activate/Cancel Learning Under Learning, On or Off

To Reset User's Dictionary

Reset learning \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow **Yes**

To Clear Records of Pictograms/Symbols Clear history $\rightarrow Yes$

To Change Cursor Movement Speed

Auto cursor → Off|Slow|Fast

Saving SMS to Drafts

In SMS creation window, tap Save to Drafts

Available only when either recipient or text is entered.

Converting SMS to S! Mail

In SMS creation window, tap To S!Mail

 If SMS containing Hangul characters is converted to S! Mail, Graphic Mail will be unavailable.

Requesting SMS Delivery Report

In SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow Sending options \rightarrow Under Delivery report, On or Off

 Set On to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from the Message Center to the other party.
 Set this option to message being created.

Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow Sending options \rightarrow Expiry time \rightarrow Select an item

Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow *Remove text* \rightarrow *Yes*

Sending SMS Automatically within Signal Area

In SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow *Send Reservation* \rightarrow *Within network* \rightarrow *Yes*

Setting Delivery Time

In SMS creation window, tap More \rightarrow Send Reservation \rightarrow Date & time \rightarrow Reserved date \rightarrow Enter reserved date \rightarrow Reserved time \rightarrow Enter reserved time \rightarrow OK \rightarrow Yes

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Show* 3D Pictograms

Received Messages

Retrieving Messages Manually

Tap Messaging → Retrieve new

Setting Display Size of Attached Image

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Picture appearance \rightarrow Select an item

Retrieving Part Received Message

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Retrieve mail

To Retrieve a Message

Select message to retrieve → Tap Retrieve mail

To Retrieve All Messages

Mark all → Tap Retrieve mail

Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received msg.* \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select notification \rightarrow Tap Forward \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc)

Calling Sender

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Tap Call → Tap message → *Call*/Tap Int. call / Tap Video call

• The sender should be logged as a phone number.

Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select notification \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Select an item

Replying to a Message with a Predefined Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Touch and hold Reply $\xrightarrow{\text{min}}$ \rightarrow Select template

After template is selected, message will be sent.

Using/Managing Messages

Viewing Attachment

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select message → Select a file → *Open*

- To save a file to Data Folder before viewing, select a file in Message window and select Save.
- To register attachment to vCard or vCalendar before viewing, select a file in Message window and select Register to Phonebook, or Register to Calendar.
- If a file requiring Content Key is attached, a confirmation appears. To view the file, choose Yes and purchase or acquire Content Key.
- If a file which allows play/view only once is attached, a confirmation appears.

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Tap Save (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow Save \rightarrow Items) \rightarrow Check files \rightarrow Tap Save

 If files with the same name exist, notification appears. Tap OK → Edit file name.

Changing Mail Group Name

Tap Menu → *Phone func.* → *Mail group* → Tap Rename group → Select Mail Group → Enter Mail Group name → Tap OK

Deleting Mail Group

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Phone func.* \rightarrow *Mail group* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check Mail Group \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

Deleting Member in Mail Group

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Phone func.* \rightarrow *Mail group* \rightarrow Select Mail Group \rightarrow Tap Remove \rightarrow Check member \rightarrow Tap Remove \rightarrow *Yes*

Saving Received/Sent Graphic Mail as Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Tap Save (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow Save \rightarrow As template) \rightarrow Enter file name

• Available only when text is decorated (�P.4-6).

Showing 3D Pictograms

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select a folder as required → Select message → Tap More → Show 3D Pictograms

Adding Sender to Phone Book

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Add to phonebook \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Select phone number or mail address

To Save as a New Entry

New → (�P.2-17 Creating New Entries ⑤)

To Update Existing Entry

Update → Search and select entry (�P.2-18) →

Enter each item (�P.2-17)

Viewing Sender and Recipient

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *View mail address*

Copying Message Content

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.*→ Select folder → Select message → Tap
Copy (for some windows, tap More → *Copy*)

- To Copy Sender or Recipient Address

 Address → Select address to copy
- To Copy Subject

 Subject (♠P.2-20 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)
- To Copy Text

 Message text (♠P.2-20 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)

Deleting Message

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap Delete (for some windows, tap More → Delete) → Yes

Setting Picture Appearance

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → *Settings* → *Picture appearance* → Select an item

Setting Font Size

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → Settings → Font size → Select an item

Changing Scroll Unit

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → Settings → Scroll unit → Select an item

Showing/Hiding Navigation Bar

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → Settings → Under Navigation bar, On or Off

Setting Character Code

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received msg.* \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Char-code* \rightarrow Select an item

Reporting Received Message as Spam

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Select message \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Report spam \rightarrow Tap Send

Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → Scroll jump → Select an item

Viewing Mail/Template Details

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Templates*, *Sent msg.* → Select folder as required → Select message or template → Tap Details (for some windows, tap More → Details)

 Alternatively, tap Messaging → Received msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent msg., or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Tap Details (for some windows, tap More → **Details**) → Select message or Templates.

Sorting Messages

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Drafts, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** \rightarrow Select folder as required → Tap Sort by (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow Sort by) \rightarrow Select an item

- Sort messages by following items.
 - By time (*Time* ↓ /*Time* ↑)
 - By recipients/sender (*Recipients/Sender*)
 - By read or unread messages (*Read/Unread*)
 - By subject (Subject)
 - By message size (Size)
 - By attachment (Attach)
 - By locked/unlocked message (*Lock*)
 - By flag (Flag)
- When **Recipients**, **Sender** or **Subject** is selected, messages are sorted in order by single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, singlebyte Katakana, double-byte symbol, double-byte Hiragana, double-byte Katakana, Kanji, Hangul, Pictograms, double-byte number, and double-byte alphabet. When Subject is selected, messages with **Untitled** appear first.

Locking/Unlocking Message/Template

Tap Messaging → Received msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent msg. or Unsent msg. → Select folder as required → Tap Lock/Unlock (for some windows, tap More) → Lock/Unlock → Tap message/template to lock → Tap OK

Tap message/template to unlock.

Changing Messages to Read/Unread

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select a folder → Tap More → Switch to read/unread → k to read / k to unread → Tap OK

Setting toggles by each tap.

Moving SMS Message to Handset/USIM Card

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg., Sent msg. or *Unsent msg*. → Select folder as required → Tap More \rightarrow Move to USIM/phone \rightarrow Tap SMS to move → Tap OK

- Tap message with \square to move to USIM Card, tap message with [iii] to move to handset.
- Save up to ten messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies according to the USIM Card
- When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to move to USIM Card

Sending Draft Message

Tap Messaging → *Drafts* → Select message → Tap Send

• When recipient is not entered, Send is not available for tapping.

Editing & Sending Sent Messages

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Sent msg. \rightarrow Select folder → Select message → Tap Edit → (⑤P.4-4 S! Mail (2), P.4-7 SMS (2)

 Alternatively, tap Messaging → Sent msg. → Select folder → Tap Edit → Select message to send.

Viewing Delivery Report

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Sent msg. \rightarrow Select folder → Select a message with *Delivery report* setting → Tap Report

 Available only when SMS or S! Mail with phone number in Recipient field is sent.

Canceling Sent Messages

Tap Messaging → Sent msg. → Select folder → Select message to cancel → Tap More → Set sent cancel → Yes → Let me cancel the mail transmitted sometime ago is sent

Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

Tap Messaging → *Unsent msg.* → Select message \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS (2)

 Alternatively, tap Messaging → Unsent msg. → Tap Edit → Select message to send.

Resending Unsent Messages

Tap Messaging → Unsent msg. → Tap Resend → Select message to resend

Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message

Tap Messaging → *Unsent msg.* → Tap More → *Error details* → Select a message to view

Viewing Saved Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Templates* \rightarrow Select template

Editing Saved Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Templates* \rightarrow Select saved template \rightarrow Tap Mail \rightarrow Tap Enter Text field \rightarrow Enter text \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Tap Save \rightarrow *As template* \rightarrow Enter file name

Sending Saved Template via S! Mail

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → Select template → Tap Send via message → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

Moving Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → Tap Move → *Folders* or *Files* → Check folder or template to move → Tap Move → Select a destination

To create new target folder, tap Create folder →
Enter folder name.

Copying Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → Tap Copy → *Folders* or *Files* → Check folder or template → Tap Copy → Select a location to copy

Sending Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Templates \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Send

To Send via Message

Via message → Select template → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check template to send → Tap Send → (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check template to send → Tap Send → (\bigcirc P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check template to send → Tap Send → (PP.13-8)

Sorting Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Templates* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Sort by* \rightarrow Select an item

Managing Template

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Templates* \rightarrow Select folder as required \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Manage*

To Change Folder or File Name

Rename → Select folder or file → Enter name

To Create Folder

Create folder → Enter folder name

To View Contents Key

Content key info → Select Content Key

To Purchase or Acquire Contents Key

Download Content key → Select template

Setting Secret to Templates Folder

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → Tap More → Set/Unset secret → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Check folders to set secret → Tap OK

 Secret folders are hidden in *Secret mode*. To cancel Secret mode temporarily, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Viewing Server Mail

Tap Messaging → Server mail → Retrieve mail list → When a confirmation appears, choose Yes

Updating Mail List

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Server mail* \rightarrow *Retrieve mail list* \rightarrow Tap Update

Receiving Mail List Message

Tap Messaging → Server mail

To Receive a Selected Message

Retrieve mail list \rightarrow If a confirmation appears, choose Yes \rightarrow Tap Get \rightarrow Check message to receive \rightarrow Tap Get

To Receive All Mails Retrieve all mails

 Alternatively, Retrieve mail list → When a confirmation appears, choose Yes → Tap Retrieve all.

Forwarding Server Mail

Tap Messaging → Server mail → Retrieve mail list \rightarrow If a confirmation appears, choose $Yes \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Remote forward \rightarrow Select$ message to forward (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

- Fw: appears in Subject field automatically.
- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (P.4-19 Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding).

Deleting All Server Mail

Tap Messaging → Server mail → Delete all → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes

Deleting Mail List Messages

Tap Messaging → Server mail → Retrieve mail $list \rightarrow lf$ a confirmation appears, choose Yes → Tap More → Delete → Check message to delete → Tap Delete → Yes

Viewing Server Mail Usage

Tap Messaging → Server mail → Server mail memory

To update status, tap Update.

Viewing Memory Status

Tap Messaging → *Memory status* → Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow Size (KB) or Count

- Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg. Unsent msg. and SMS (USIM) memory appears.
- USIM Card SMS (USIM) appears in Count only.
- To delete contents of current item, tap Delete (♠P.12-14 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Managing Folders

Changing Folder Name

Tap Messaging \rightarrow *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Tap Rename → Select a folder → Enter name

Setting Secret to Folder

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. → Tap More → Set/Unset secret → Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow OK

 Secret folders are Hide in Secret mode. To cancel Secret mode temporarily, tap More $\rightarrow Unlock$ temporarily → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Deleting Folders

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. → Tap More → **Delete** → Select a folder to delete \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

Viewing Message or Folder Details

Tap Messaging → Received msg. or Sent msg. → Tap More → Details → Select a folder

Changing Sorting Rules

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. → Tap Auto sort → Select the folder whose rules are to be changed

To Change Phone Numbers or E-mail or Partial Match Mail Addresses to Sort Select Rule field \rightarrow (\triangleright P.4-16 Sorting Messages (3))

To Change the Text

Select Text field → Edit text → Tap OK

Deleting Sorting Rules

Tap Messaging \rightarrow Received msg. or Sent msg. → Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to have rules to delete → Tap Delete → Check rules to delete → Tap Delete

Internet Services

Internet Services	5-2
Web Certificates (SSL/TLS)	5-2
Opening Saved Pages	
, 3	
Yahoo! Keitai	
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	
Viewing Page from Yahoo! Keitai Menu List	
Entering URL	5-3
Entering URL from History	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
PC Site Browser Homepage	
Entering URL	
Entering URL from History	5-/
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Page Operations	
Selecting Menu	5-5
Entering Text	5-6
Page Zoom	5-6
Multi Page (Tab)	5-6
Buttons & Check Boxes	5-7
Streaming from Page Link	5-7
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-0
Saving Bookmarks	
Accessing Bookmarks	
Saving Pages	5-0
Opening Saved Pages	
RSS Feed	5-9
Registering RSS	5-9
Viewing Update Information	5-9
Updating RSS	5-9
, ,	

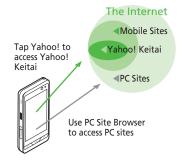


Advanced Settings	5-10
Yahoo! Keitai	
PC Site Browser	5-12
Page Operations	5-15
Bookmarks	5-15
Saved Pages	
RSS Feed	5-18

Internet Services

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

View Web page contents or download media files.



- In this guide, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to SoftBank Mobile Internet portal and service itself. "PC sites" are sites accessible via PC Site Browser. "Internet" refers to both Internet and Mobile Internet sites.
- \bullet A separate subscription is required for Internet services.
- Before using Internet, retrieve Network information.

Note

• Internet connections incur Packet Communication charges.

Web Certificates (SSL/TLS)

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.

Confirm electronic certificates saved on handset (◆P.5-12, P.5-14).

Note

Using SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open a page.

Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage, SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. are not liable for the security of SSL/TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Opening Saved Pages

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in a cache. The cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When full, the oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

When a saved page is opened again, it may open from the Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

- When another USIM Card is inserted, cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved, the page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Yahoo! Keitai

Use Yahoo! Keitai to view page contents or download image/music files.

Alternatively, access Yahoo! Keitai from Main menu, History, Bookmarks, Web search, or by entering URL.

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

- 1 Tap Yahoo!
- Select an item
- When accessing Mobile site for the first time, a screen for Retrieving Network Information appears at 1.
 After the retrieval, website appears.
- •To open PC Site Browser from Yahoo! Keitai, tap More → Switch to PC site browser → This page or Link.

Note

 When Send referer is set to Not send, pages may not appear (◆P.5-12).

Viewing Page from Yahoo! Keitai Menu List

1 Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! →

Menu list

Entering URL

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *Enter URL*
 - Default: "http://" is set.
- 2 Enter URL
- ◆Alternatively, in a page, tap More → Enter URL
 → Enter URL.

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from Yahoo! Keitai are saved in Yahoo! Keitai History.

Access URL to save up to 50 History.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → History
- Select website
- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → History → Select website

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.5-10

- Deleting Access History
- Sending Access History
- Viewing Access History Details

₹ Settings

- Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates (P.14-14)
- Show/Hide Manufacture Number (P.14-14)
- Send/Hide Referrer (P.14-14)
- Select Cookie Setting (P.14-14)
- Select Script Setting (P.14-14)
- Confirm Root Certificate (P.14-14)
- Set Certificate Retention Period (P.14-14)
- Show/Hide Secure Prompt (P.14-14)
- Initialize Browser (P.14-14)
- Reset Settings (RP.14-14)

PC Site Browser

Use PC Site Browser to view page contents or download image/music files from PC sites. Alternatively, access PC Site Browser from Homepage, History, Bookmarks, Web search, or by entering URL.

PC Site Browser Homepage

- Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser \rightarrow Homepage
 - If a warning appears, tap OK.
- Select an item
- Activate PC Site Browser, appears.
- •In PC Site Browser, only document files and widgets can be downloaded or streamed.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- •To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, tap More → Switch to Vahoo! Keitai

Note

- When **Send referer** is set to **Not send**. pages may not open (P.5-14).
- Viewing rich contents sites may incur high Packet Communication charges.

Entering URL

- Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser \rightarrow Enter URL
 - Default: "http://" is set.
- Enter URL
 - If a warning appears, tap OK.

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from PC Site Browser are saved in History.

Access URL to save up to 50 items in History.

- Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser → History
- Select website
 - When warning appears, tap OK.
- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Select website.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.5-12

- Deleting Access History
- Sending Access History
- Viewing Access History Details

₹ Settings

- Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates/RSS Feed List
 (P.14-14)
- Show/Hide Manufacture Number (P.14-15)
- Send/Hide Referrer (P.14-15)
- Select Cookie Setting (P.14-15)
- Select Script Setting (P.14-15)
- Confirm Root Certificate (P.14-15)
- Set Certificate Retention Period (P.14-15)
- Show/Hide Warning (P.14-15)
- Show/Hide Secure Prompt (P.14-15)
- Initialize Browser (P.14-15)
- Reset Settings (P.14-15)

Page Operations

Text and images shown in page can be zoom in/out.

Alternatively, select menu to link target page, set function with radio button.

Selecting Menu



Yahoo! Keitai Top Page

- 1 4 / A / V / D: Scroll to up/ down/left/right, or move the cursor
- 2 Highlight menu → Select

- Alternatively, tap an item directly to select the link.
- Alternatively, touch the screen directly to scroll.
- Press with no previous page, you are prompted to close Internet connection. Choose Yes to close it.
- Tap Back or press CLEAR to return previous page.
- Highlight link and tap Select; move to target page.
- Tap Forward to back to the status before tapping Back or pressing CLEAR.
- Rotate handset to show image view horizontally to Landscape view.
 Operations are the same as Landscape view.
- Press To change to full screen view. Press it again to return to the previous view.
- In case of PC Site Browser, touching and holding an item will open it in a new tab (not available in full screen view).
- ullet Press \bullet for 1 + seconds to mute BGM in page.

Entering Text



- 1 Select Text field
- 2 Enter text

Note

• Text entry and item selection varies by page.

Page Zoom

- 1 Tap More \rightarrow Zoom in/out
- 2 Tap 🛨 / 🖃 to adjust zoom level



- Alternatively, use 100 to adjust zoom.
- For PC Site Browser, tap Zoom → tap + / to adjust zoom level.
- For PC Site Browser, touch and hold place on screen without link to view zoom button. Move stylus upward/downward to adjust zoom.

Multi Page (Tab)

Use tabs at the top of Display to view pages. Open up to three pages simultaneously.



- 1 Tap 🛨
- 2 Tap tab → Access target information(�P.5-15)
- Select tab to Toggle Pages
 - Tap to close viewing tab.
- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

Buttons & Check Boxes



- Radio button
 Select an item only. Select an item with
 to select it (appearing as <a>)).
- ② Menu field Open a menu and select an item. Highlight menu → select an item.
- 3 Check box Select multiple items. Select an item with ☐ to select it (appearing as ☑).
- ① Command button Perform operations assigned to a button. Highlight a command button → select an item.

Streaming from Page Link



- Open a page containing a page link
- Select a link

Advanced

Advanced Settings

- Yahoo! Keitai (@P.5-10)
- Showing/Hiding Keypad on Pages
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL from History
- Searching with New Window
- Searching Text
- Moving to Top/Bottom of Page
- Sending URL
- Zooming Page in/out
- Viewing Flash®

- Viewing Only Selected Frame
- Viewing Page Details
- Moving to Main Menu
- Exiting Browser
- PC Site Browser (P.5-12)
- Capturing Screen in a Page
- Copying Text
- Entering URL from History
- Searching with New Window
- Searching Text
- Sending URL
- Moving to Top/Bottom of Page
- Viewing Flash®
- Viewing Only Selected Frame
- Viewing Page Details
- Opening Homepage
- Changing Page Layout
- Exiting Browser

₹ Settings

- Yahoo! Keitai
- Set Text Size in Yahoo! Keitai Pages (P.14-4)
- Change Page Font Size (P.14-13)
- Set Page Scroll Unit (
 P.14-13)
- Show/Hide Page Images (IPP.14-13)
- Play/Mute Page Sounds (P.14-13)

- PC Site Browser
- Set Text Size in PC Site Browser (P.14-4)
- Change Page Font Size (P.14-13)
- Show/Hide Page Navigation When Zooming (P.14-14)
- Show/Hide Page Images (P.14-14)
- Play/Mute Page Sounds (@P.14-14)

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Save site URLs to Bookmarks. Save page content to Saved Pages. Open pages without establishing an Internet connection.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 50 bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC site, each.

- 🚹 Open a page
- 3 Enter title

Accessing Bookmarks

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser as required → Bookmarks
- Select a bookmark

Note

 Internet connections may incur Packet Communication charges.

Saving Pages

Save up to 30 pages each for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Sites, each.

- 1 Open a page
- 2 Tap More (for some windows, tap More → Saved pages) → Save
- 3 Enter title

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser as required → Saved pages
- 2 Select a page

Note

• If USIM Card inserted when page was saved is replaced, saved page will not open.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.5-15

- Opening Bookmarked Website
- Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Editing Bookmark Title/URL
- Deleting Bookmarks
- Creating Folders in Bookmark List
- Sending Bookmark URL
- Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®
- Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared
- Sending Bookmark URL via IC Transmission
- Moving Bookmark to Folders
- Changing Bookmark Order
- Saving Bookmark to Data Folder
- Viewing Bookmark Details
- Opening Saved Pages in a Page
- Renaming Saved Pages
- Deleting Saved Pages
- Changing Order of Saved Pages

RSS Feed

Register RSS compatible websites; viewing content updates without accessing websites.

Registering RSS

Open RSS compatible website, 🔊 appears.

- Tap More → Register in RSS feed
- 2 Select RSS to register → Tap Select
 - After registration, Auto update confirmation appears. Tap Yes to start automatic update.
 Tap No not to start automatic update.
- •In a page with RSS link, select link to register.

Viewing Update Information

- **1** Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *RSS feed*
- 2 Select RSS to view → Select items from list

- When there is no update information, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes*.
- When selecting titles in contents list, confirmation appears. Choose Yes or No.
- View Read/Unread with located at the side of feed list title.

Updating RSS

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser → RSS feed
- 2 Tap Refresh
- 3 RSS Update operation
 - To Update Selected RSS

 Each item → Check RSS to update →
 Tap Refresh
 - To Update All RSS at Once
 - Tap Cancel to stop update.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.5-18

- Deleting RSS
- Sorting RSS
- Moving RSS to Folder
- Prohibiting RSS Update
- Creating Folders in RSS List
- Sending RSS via Message
- Sending RSS via Bluetooth[®]
- Sending RSS via Infrared
- Sending RSS via IC Transmission
- Changing RSS Folder Name
- Saving RSS to Data Folder
- Loading RSS
- Viewing RSS Details

Advanced Settings

N. Advanced Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Showing/Hiding Keypad on Pages

In a page, tap More → *Show keypad* or *Hide keypad*

- In some pages, tap numbers on Keypad, x , or
 to select an item.
- Move slide shown to adjust the transparency of Keypad.

Copying Text

In a page, tap More → *Copy text*

To Copy Selected Text

Tap the first character to copy → Tap Start point
→ Tap the last character to copy → Tap End point

To Copy All Text in Text Entry Window Tap All

Refreshing Page

In a page, tap More $\rightarrow Refresh$

Entering URL from History

From Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *Enter URL* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Insert* \rightarrow *EnterURL logs* \rightarrow Select URL

From a Page

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Enter URL* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Insert* \rightarrow *EnterURL logs* \rightarrow Select URL

 Up to ten URL logs appear, the latest first. When the limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.

Searching with New Window

In a page, tap More → Web search → Enter text

 Alternatively, tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → Web Search.

Searching Text

In a page, tap More → **Search** → Enter text to search

 Words that match are highlighted. Tap Prev. or Next to search for the previous or next match.

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, tap More $\rightarrow Jump \rightarrow Top/Bottom$

Sending URL

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Send URL* \rightarrow *S! Mail* or *SMS* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc 2)

Deleting Access History

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *History* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check history to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

Alternatively, in a page, tap More → History →
 Tap Delete → Check history to delete →
 Tap Delete → Yes.

Sending Access History

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *History* \rightarrow Tap Send URL \rightarrow *S! Mail* or *SMS* \rightarrow Select history to send \rightarrow *Yes* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc)

Alternatively, in a page, tap More → History
 → Tap Send URL → S! Mail or SMS → Select
history to send → Yes.

Viewing Access History Details

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *History* → Tap Details → Select history

 Alternatively, in a page, tap More → History → Tap Details → Select history.

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, tap More → Zoom in/out → Adjust size

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file, and tap More → Flash® menu

To Pause/Play
Pause or Play

To Play from Beginning Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, tap More → Frame in

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections.
 Such a section is referred to as "Frame".
- To return to the normal display, tap More → Frame out.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, tap More → *Details*

- To View Page Information

 Page information
- To View Server Certificate

 Server certification

Moving to Main Menu

In a page, tap More → Yahoo! Keitai

Showing/Hiding Navigation Bar

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Under *Navigation bar*, *On* or *Off*

Changing Font Size

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Font size* \rightarrow Select an item

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Scroll unit* \rightarrow Select an item

Changing Character Code

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Encoding* → Select an item

 If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, tap More → Settings → Downloads

To Set Image

Under Display image, On or Off

To Set Sound

Under Play sounds, On or Off

Setting Saving Location

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Save to \rightarrow Phone/Memory card/Ask each time

Clearing Cache

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Memory manager* \rightarrow *Clear cache* \rightarrow *Yes*

Deleting Cookies

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Memory manager* \rightarrow *Delete cookies* \rightarrow *Yes*

Deleting Certificates

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Memory manager* \rightarrow *Delete certificates* \rightarrow *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Security* \rightarrow Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referrer Information

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Send referer → Select an item

 Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent. to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, tap More → Settings → Security → Cookies → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script

In a page, tap More → Settings → Security → **Script** → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Root certificates → Select a certificate

View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificating Retention

In a page, tap More → Settings → Security → Certificate retention → Select an item

Showing/Hiding Secure Prompt

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Under Secure prompt, On or Off

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Initialized browser → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK $\rightarrow Yes$

 Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting Yahoo! Keitai Settings

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Reset settings → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Ves

Exiting Browser

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Exit* \rightarrow *Yes*

PC Site Browser

Capturing Screen in a Page

In a page, tap More → Capture screen

Save screen to Pictures folder.

Copying Text

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Copy text

To Copy Selected Text

Tap the first character to copy → Tap Start point → Tap the last character to copy → Tap End point

To Copy All Text in Text Entry Window Tap All

Entering URL from History

From PC Site Browser

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow PC site browser → Enter URL → Tap More → Insert → EnterURL logs → Select URL

From a Page

In a page, tap URL field → Tap More → Insert → EnterURL logs → Select URL

• Up to ten URL logs appear, the latest first. When the limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.

Searching with New Window

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Web search* \rightarrow Enter text

- Alternatively, tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser → Web Search.
- If a warning appears, tap OK.

Searching Text

In a page, tap More → *Search* → Enter text to search

 Matching words are highlighted. Tap Prev. or Next to search for previous or next match.

Sending URL

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Send URL \rightarrow S! Mail or SMS \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc 2)

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Quick movement* \rightarrow Tap area to view \rightarrow Tap Select

Deleting Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *History* → Tap Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Alternatively, in a page, tap More → History
 → Tap Delete → Check history to delete → Tap
 Delete → Yes.

Sending Access History

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *History* \rightarrow Tap Send URL \rightarrow *S! Mail* or *SMS* \rightarrow Select history to send \rightarrow *Yes* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc , P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc 2)

Viewing Access History Details

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *History* → Tap Details → Select history

 Alternatively, in a page, tap More → History → Tap Details → Select history.

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file, and tap More → Flash® menu

To Pause/Play
Pause or Play

To Play from Beginning
Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, tap More → Frame in

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred to as "Frame".
- To return to the normal display, tap More → Frame out.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, tap More → Details

To View Page Information Page information

To View Server Certificate

Server certification

Opening Homepage

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Homepage*

Changing Font Size

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Font size* \rightarrow Select an item

Setting the Guide Show/Hide When Zoom

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Under Page navigation, On or Off

Changing Character Code

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Encoding* \rightarrow Select an item

 If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Downloads*

To Set Image

Under Display image, On or Off

To Set Sound

Under Play sounds, On or Off

Setting the Saving Location

In a page, tap More \rightarrow **Settings** \rightarrow Save to → Phone/Memory card/Ask each time

Clearing Cache

In a page, tap More → Settings → Memory manager → Clear cache → Yes

Deleting Cookies

In a page, tap More → Settings → Memory manager → Delete cookies → Yes

Deleting Certificates

In a page, tap More → Settings → Memory manager → Delete certificates → Yes

Deleting RSS Feed List

In a page, tap More → Settings → Memory manager → Delete RSS feed list → Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Under Manufacture number, On or Off

Sending/Not Sending Referrer Information

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Send referer → Select an item

• Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Cookies → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* to show acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow websites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script

In a page, tap More → Settings → Security → Script → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Root certificates → Select a certificate

• View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificate Retention

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Certificate retention → Select an item

Showing/Hiding Secure Prompt

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Under Secure prompt, On/Off

Viewing Warning Messages

In a page, tap More → Settings → Under Warning messages, On/Off

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, tap More → Settings → Initialized browser \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

• Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting PC Site Browser

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Reset settings \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

Changing Page Layout

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Small screen or PC screen

Exiting Browser

In a page, tap More → Exit

Page Operations

Saving Phone Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/mail address, select phone number or mail address → Save Number → Phone or USIM

To Save as a New Entry

To Update Entry

 Available phone numbers and mail addresses appear underlined.

Sending Mail to Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/mail address, select phone number or mail address → *Create Message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (�P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤, P.4-7 SMS ⑥)

 Available phone numbers and mail addresses appear underlined.

Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone number → *Voice Call* or *Video Call*

• Available phone numbers appear underlined.

Using URL to Open Another Page Select URL in a page

Available URLs appear underlined.

Saving Images/Other Files from Pages

To Save Page Images

In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save items* → Select image to save → Tap Save

- For Yahoo! Keitai, select an image to save only when there are multiple images.
- If image is saved as GIF file or JPEG file and is not copy protected file, *Pictures/My Pictograms/ Mail Art* may appear when saving.
 Select *Pictures* to saved to Pictures in Data Folder.
 Select *My Pictograms* to saved to My Pictograms in Data Folder.
 Select *Mail Art* to save to Mail Art in Data Folder.

To Save Background Images

In a page, tap More \rightarrow Save files \rightarrow Save BG image \rightarrow Tap Save \rightarrow Select save location

To Save Background Sound

In a page, tap More \rightarrow *Save files* \rightarrow *Save items* \rightarrow Select background sound to save \rightarrow Tap Save

- They cannot be saved with PC Site Browser.
- ullet In a page with image, tap ${\bf I}$ to save sound.

To Save Linked Files

In a page, select a link → Tap Save

- For Auto Save files, tap link to save files.
- If file details appear, select from following options: (available options vary by file type).
 Play: Play file (e.g., media file)
 Back to browser: Return to page
 Set as: Save file to Ringtone
- If files with same name exist, notification appears, choose Yes to save it with a different name. Choose No to edit the file name.

Bookmarks

Opening Bookmarked Website

In a page, tap Bookmark \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Select a bookmark

 Tap or in Bookmark list to toggle between List view and Thumbnail view.

Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Name field → Enter name → Tap Save

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser*→ *Bookmarks* → Tap Add → Tap URL field →
Enter URL → Tap Name field → Enter name →
Tap Save

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap Add \rightarrow Tap URL field \rightarrow Enter URL \rightarrow Tap Name field \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow Tap Save

Editing Bookmark Title/URL

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Name field → Enter name → Tap Save

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *Bookmarks* \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow Select bookmark to edit \rightarrow Tap URL field \rightarrow Enter URL \rightarrow Tap Name field \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow Tap Save

5

📕 In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Name field → Enter name → Tap Save

Deleting Bookmarks

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *Bookmarks* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check bookmarks to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

📕 In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check bookmarks to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

 In Thumbnail view, select bookmarks to delete → Yes.

Creating Folders in Bookmark List

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow **Bookmarks** \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow **Create folder** \rightarrow Enter folder name

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *Bookmarks* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Create folder* \rightarrow Enter folder name

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Create folder* \rightarrow Enter folder name

Sending Bookmark URL

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → Bookmarks →
Tap More → Send → Via message → S! Mail
or SMS → Check bookmark to send → Tap Send
→ (P P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

In PC Site Browser

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via message* \rightarrow *S! Mail* or *SMS* \rightarrow Check bookmark to send \rightarrow Tap Send \rightarrow (PP.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

• In Thumbnail view, select bookmarks to send.

Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *Bookmarks* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via Bluetooth* \rightarrow Check bookmarks to send \rightarrow Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

In Thumbnail view, select bookmarks to send.

Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via infrared** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (\bigcirc P.13-3)

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (\bigcirc P.13-3)

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* →
Tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (�P.13-3)

In Thumbnail view, select bookmarks to send.

Sending Bookmark URL via IC Transmission

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → Bookmarks → Tap More → Send → Via 1C transmission → Check bookmark to send → Tap Send (�P.13-8)

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser*→ *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via IC transmission* → Check bookmark to send → Tap

Send (�P.13-8)

📰 In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via IC transmission* \rightarrow Check bookmark to send \rightarrow Tap Send (\bigcirc P.13-8)

• In Thumbnail view, select bookmarks to send.

Moving Bookmark to Folders

From Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Move** → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

From PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Move* → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

From a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Move* → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

- To create a new folder to move an item, tap Create Folder → Enter a new folder name.
- In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to move → Select a destination folder.

Changing Bookmark Order

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Change order** → If confirmation appears, tap OK → Drag a bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser*→ *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Change order*→ If confirmation appears, tap OK → Drag a
bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* →
Tap More → *Change order* → If confirmation appears, tap OK → Drag a bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → **Bookmarks** →
Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone/ Memory Card** → Select bookmark to save → **Yes**

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser
→ Bookmarks → Tap More → Save to Data
Folder → Phone/Memory Card → Select
hookmark to save → Yes

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* →
Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone/ Memory Card* → Select bookmark to save → *Yes*

 To save a file to *Memory Card*, insert Memory Card.

Viewing Bookmark Details

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → Bookmarks →

Tap More → Details → Select bookmark

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Details* → Select bookmark

In a Page

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Details* → Select bookmark

Saved Pages

Opening Saved Pages in a Page

In a page, tap Saved pages (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow *Saved pages*) \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Select saved pages

In Saved Pages, tap or to toggle List/Thumbnail view.

Renaming Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *Saved pages* → Tap Rename → Select saved pages to edit → Enter name

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Tap Rename → Select saved pages to edit → Enter name

In a Page

In a page, tap Saved pages (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow *Saved pages*) \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap Rename \rightarrow Select saved pages to edit \rightarrow Enter name

Deleting Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → Saved pages →
Tap Delete → Select saved pages to delete → Yes

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Tap Delete → Select saved pages to delete → *Yes*

In a Page

In a page, tap Saved pages (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow *Saved pages*) \rightarrow *Open list* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Select saved pages to delete \rightarrow *Yes*

 In the list, check a saved pages to delete → Tap Delete → Yes.

Changing Order of Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → Saved pages → Tap Change order → If confirmation appears, tap OK → Drag saved pages to desired location → Tap Done

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Tap Change order → If confirmation appears, tap OK → Drag saved page to desired location → Tap Done

In a Page

In a page, tap Saved pages (for some windows, tap More \rightarrow **Saved pages**) \rightarrow **Open list** \rightarrow Tap Change order \rightarrow If confirmation appears, tap OK \rightarrow Drag saved pages to desired location \rightarrow Tap Done

RSS Feed

Prohibiting RSS Update

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Restrict update* \rightarrow Check RSS to prohibit \rightarrow Tap Select

Deleting RSS

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check RSS to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

 If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Creating Folders in RSS List

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Create folder* \rightarrow Enter folder name

Changing RSS Folder Name

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Rename folder* \rightarrow Select folder \rightarrow Enter folder name

Sending RSS via Message

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via message* \rightarrow Check RSS to send \rightarrow Tap Select \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 Creating/Sending Messages \bigcirc 2)

Sending RSS via Bluetooth®

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → PC site browser → RSS feed → Tap More → Send → Via Bluetooth → Check RSS to send → Tap Select → (\bigcirc P.13-7 Receiving One Item at a Time(\bigcirc 2)

Sending RSS via Infrared

Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! → *PC site browser* → *RSS feed* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Check RSS to send → Tap Select (PP.13-3)

Sending RSS via IC Transmission

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via 1C transmission* \rightarrow Check RSS to send \rightarrow Tap Select (\bigcirc P.13-8)

Moving RSS to Folder

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Move* \rightarrow Check RSS to move \rightarrow Tap Select \rightarrow Select folder to move

 To create a new folder to move to, tap Create folder → Enter folder name.

Sorting RSS

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap Change order \rightarrow Drag RSS to desired location \rightarrow Tap OK

Saving RSS to Data Folder

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Export* \rightarrow *Phone/Memory card* \rightarrow *Yes*

• The save location can be set to Memory Card if inserted.

Loading RSS

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Import* \rightarrow Select file to load

To Add RSS Feed

 $Add \rightarrow Yes/No$

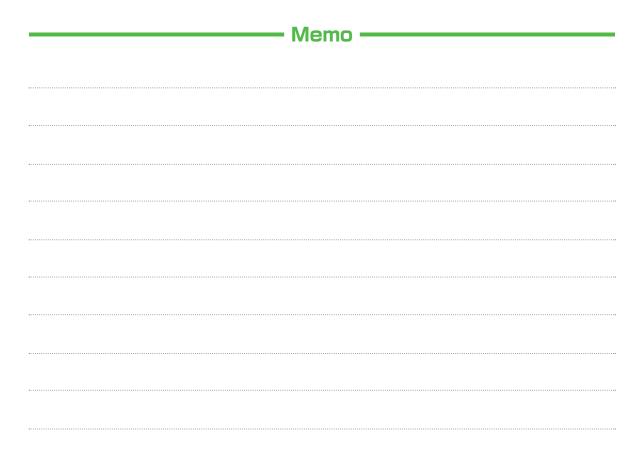
■ To Delete All and Add RSS Feed

Delete & Overwrite → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

 After saving, Update confirmation appears. Choose Yes to update.

Viewing RSS Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow *PC site browser* \rightarrow *RSS feed* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Details* \rightarrow Select RSS



Digital TV

Enjoy One Seg in Wide Screen	
One Seg	
Precautions for Watching TV	
ReceptionBattery	
Charging	
Antenna	6-3
Receiving Call While Watching TV	6-4
Receiving Call	
Receiving Mail	
Channel Setup (Area Setup)	
Watching TV	
Watching TV G-Guide Mobile (Japanese)	6-6
Data Broadcast (Japanese)	6-6
TV Links	
Record/Playback Programs	6-8
Recording Programs	6-8
Capturing Still Image of Current TV Program	
Playing Recorded Programs	6-9 6-9
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	
Setting Timer via EPG	
Manual Timer Settings	
Viewing Reservation	6-10
Advanced Settings	6-11
While Watching TV	
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	6-13



Enjoy One Seg in Wide Screen

This handset supports One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasts. One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this guide.

Setting up Channels

Set up channels to watch Digital TV (♠P.6-4).

Watching TV

In Standby, press \P for 1 + seconds to activate TV \P (\P P.6-5).



Downloading Electric Program Guide



Download an electric program guide to find the desired TV program (�P.6-6).

Recording/Playing/Reservation



Record and reserve TV programs with TV timer recording. Play recorded programs (●P.6-8).

Watching Data Broadcasts



Watch Data Broadcasts to get program-related information (�P.6-6).

TV Link



Join a program through TV links (♠P.6-7).

One Seg

One Seg is a terrestrial digital broadcast service supporting mobile television and Data Broadcasts in Japan. The six MHz band assigned to each digital channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" to mobile devices.

One Seg service began on April 1, 2006, in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures in Japan. For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

 The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website: http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/ (PC) http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seq/k/ (Mobile) Japanese

Precautions for Watching TV

Please confirm the following precautions before using TV.

- This handset supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast service available only in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle. (mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law since November 1, 2004.) For TV use while walking, road safety precautions should always apply.
- Incoming transmissions may affect audio/ visual signal. Use of another handset near this handset may also affect TV.
- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) where viewing Digital TV with Speaker is inappropriate.

Reception

Digital TV may not be viewable in the following places:

- Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations.
- In mountainous areas or near tall buildings.
- Aboard trains or in moving vehicles.

- Near high-voltage lines, neon lights, or wireless base stations.
- Near railroad tracks or highways.
- In underground shopping malls or tunnels.
- Anywhere jamming signal is broadcast or reception is blocked.

Battery

When battery level is , Digital TV is not available.

 If battery runs out while watching, TV automatically ends.

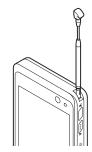
Charging

Charge battery while viewing Digital TV.

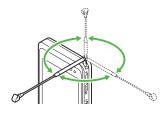
- Use SoftBank approved AC Charger.
- Keep AC Charger cord away from Antenna; may cause interference.
- Charging takes longer when TV is active.

Antenna

 Handset features a whip Antenna that divides into two segments. Fully extend Antenna until fixed.



- After use, hold base of Antenna to retract it; pressing down on it with force may cause damage.
 Retract it and replace top bead into handset.
- Extend Antenna when viewing Digital TV, unless a broadcasting station is close. In this case, retract Antenna for better reception.
- For best reception, fold and rotate 360°.



Receiving Call While Watching TV

Receiving Call



Incoming call window appears. Press to answer a call.

The other party's phone number appears during the call. End the call to return to Digital TV.

Receiving Mail



Sender's address, etc. appears at top of Display. Tap the ticker to view messages. Press to return to TV window.

- When returning to Standby leaving messages unread, total number of new and unread messages is shown in Received msg.
- Voice Call or incoming message may affect the quality of TV audio or visual reception. Handset use near handset while TV is active, may affect audio or visual reception quality.

Channel Setup (Area Setup)

Handset contains local channel information. Before using TV for the first time, specify your area to set up channels.

- 1 (1 + seconds)
- 2 Confirmation appears, choose Yes
- 3 Select a region
- 4 Select a province
- Select a local area
 - · Channel search starts.
 - To cancel channel search, tap *Cancel*.
- 6 Tap Next → Enter name

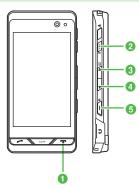
Watching TV

When channels are set, watching TV, program guide, Data Broadcast, and TV links are available.

Watching TV

- 1 (1 + seconds)
- Tap Channel field → Select a channel
 - To change a channel one by one, tap \(\bigcup \)/ \(\bigcup \).
 - Alternatively, swipe screen right/left to change channel.
- To exit TV, $\nearrow \longrightarrow Yes$
- ●To adjust volume while watching TV, press 🖺 / 🖟.

Key Assignments



No.	Function
0	Exit TV
2	Lock Touch Panel and button*
34	Adjust volume
3 (1 + seconds)	Activate TV
5	Capture still image
5 (1 + seconds)	Record/End recording

* Watching programs and adjusting volume is available. While recording program, recording continues, but programs cannot be watched.

TV Window



(With Subtitle)



Portrait/Show **Data Broadcast**



Landscape/Show 3 to 6



Landscape/Hide 3 to 6

- 1 TV Image
- 2 Subtitle
- 3 Station name/Program name
- 4 Channel
 - •When no channel is set, ******* appears.
- Signal strength
- 6 Volume
- Data Broadcast
- To change to Portrait view or Landscape view, hold handset vertically or horizontally.
- Tap Display or press any buttons other than \(\text{CEAN} \), \(\text{TD} \) or \(\text{CEAN} \), then \(\text{3} \) to \(\text{6} \)
 appear for a few seconds.
- Data Broadcast is only available in Portrait view.

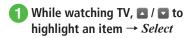
G-Guide Mobile (Japanese)

"G ガイドモバイル" (G-GUIDE Mobile) is a convenient application that combines Program guides for the terrestrial analog and digital broadcasting. Search TV programs by genre or keyword and retrieve them anytime and anywhere.

- Alternatively, in TV window, tap EPG to show Program guide.
- When Program guide is activated for the first time, Initial setting window for G ガイドモ パイル (G-GUIDE Mobile) appears. Perform initial settings to access Program guide.
- •To highlight item in EPG, tap \uparrow / \downarrow / \leftarrow / \rightarrow . Then, tap \bigcirc to select the highlighted item.
- Highlight program to watch, tap TV 起動 to show TV window. Also, tapping O displays the detailed information of the highlighted program.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In addition to audio/visuals, Data Broadcast is available. Follow onscreen instructions to get program-related information or enjoy interactive TV services.



 Internet connection confirmation may appear for Data Broadcast/transmissions from broadcaster.
 Information is free, however, accessing links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.

Note

 No Communication charges apply for receiving Data Broadcast. However, Communication charges apply for using interactive services provided by Data Broadcast or services based on the Internet.

TV Links

Procedures for saving links vary according to the program. Check information in Data Broadcasts.

Saving TV Links

For a program offering Data
 Broadcast, select a link source

Opening TV Links

1 (1 + seconds) \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow TV links \rightarrow Select TV links \rightarrow Yes

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.6-11

- Rejecting a Call while Watching TV
- Viewing Program Information
- Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View
- Updating Channels in the Area
- Renaming Areas
- Deleting Areas
- Resetting All Channel Details
- Viewing Area Details
- Changing Channel Numbers
- Deleting Channel Details
- Viewing Channel Details
- Setting Subtitle Display
- Changing to Data Full Screen View
- Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page
- Viewing TV Links
- Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Headset
- Starting Recording While Watching Current Programs
- Capturing Still Image while Watching Programs
- Ending TV Application
- Deleting TV Links
- Viewing TV Link Details

₹ Settings

- Select Connection Notification Type (P.14-16)
- Show/Hide Manufacture Number (P.14-16)
- Delete Station Data (P.14-16)
- Show/Hide Indicators in Landscape View (P.14-16)
- Set Whether to Show 4:3 Videos in Landscape View (P.14-16)
- Set Whether to Show 4:3 Videos in Portrait View (P.14-16)
- Adjust Display Brightness (P.14-16)
- Adjust Sound Quality (
 P.14-16)
- Select Language (P.14-16)
- Set Smart Volume Control (P.14-16)
- Select Output Device (P.14-16)
- Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms (P.14-17)
- End TV after Setting Duration (P.14-17)

Record/Playback Programs

- Format and insert Memory Card before recording (♦P.12-10).
- Never remove Memory Card while recording. Damage or accidental data loss may result.
- Recording is only available with sufficient remaining memory.
- Recording stops when battery runs low: charge battery while recording.
- Recorded programs cannot be copied/ forwarded or attached to SI Mail
- Handset allows 35 minutes recording to handset and up to 12 hours recording to Memory Card per one program. Note that 12 hours recording requires about 2GB of Memory Card.
- Recording time is approximate 90 minutes with full 256 MB Memory Card.

Copyrights

This mobile phone encryption technology prevents unauthorized use through data encryption and authentication.

Use only ISDB-T Mobile Video Profile (SD-Video standard) compatible device to playback recorded data.

Handset divides recorded files based on this standard

Note

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized use.
- Recorded content may be lost or damaged accidentally or due to a malfunction. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration.
- Recorded data cannot be copied to another recordable media, such as other Memory Cards, etc.

Recording Programs

- In TV window, (1 + seconds)
 - Recording starts.
- 2 Tap Save or (1 + seconds) to end recording
- Both TV image and Data Broadcast information (if any) are recorded. Recording without text is also available (P.14-16).
- Changing volume, window size, or sound settings does not affect recordings.
- Recorded videos are stored in TV player folder if they are saved on a Memory Card.

Note

- If Memory/Battery runs low, recording stops (recorded clip is saved).
- When Voice Call request is accepted, recording continues. Confirmation appears for incoming TV Call.
- With movie set for Ringtone, TV recording takes priority over the Movie Ringtone (default Ringtone may sound).

Capturing Still Image of Current TV Program



• Capture still image of currently recording program.

Note

- Captured images cannot be copied, edited or moved.
- Captured images cannot be saved to Memory Card.
- Subtitles cannot be captured with still images.
- Still images cannot be captured while performing AV output.

Playing Recorded Programs

- \bigcirc (1 + seconds) \rightarrow Tap TV player
 - Alternatively, in TV window, tap TV player to show TV player.
- Select a file
 - Tap 📴 to play a file stored on Memory Card.
 - Playing video is resumed from previously stopped point.
 - Tap **to** pause, **to** play.
 - Tap 4 / >> to fast forward/rewind. Tap once for x2, twice for x10.
 - Tap to stop fast forwarding/rewinding.
 - Tap Stop to stop playing.
- To change the file name, perform → Tap Rename
 Select a file to change → Enter a new file name.

Viewing Captured Images

- 1 Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow TV image$
- Select captured image

- To delete the captured images, perform ① → Tap
 Delete → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete →
 Yes.

Note

 Captured images cannot be viewed from Data Folder.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Set Recording Type (P.14-16)
- Select Save Location (P.14-16)

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Save up to five reservations. However, if *Once* is selected under data in *Reservation list*, only TV programs within one week can be recorded/reserved with timer. Set each reservation for up to 35 minutes of recording to handset and 12 hours of recording to Memory Card per one program. Note that 12 hours of recording requires about 2GB of Memory Card.

Precautions for Timer Recording

- End the current operations.
- Adjust Antenna to gain good TV reception.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged (or record while charging).
- Check there is enough free space on Memory Card.

Saving Location for Recorded Programs

- If the saving location for recording video is set to Memory Card without Memory Card inserted, they will be saved in handset.
- If there is not enough free space on set saving location (phone or Memory Card), recorded video is saved in the alternative memory (Memory Card or phone).

Start/End Time

Digital TV receives programs slightly after scheduled start time; recording may start before reserved program.

Recording ends a few seconds after Timer end time.

Precautions for Timer

- Confirm Key Lock is canceled.
- Confirm *Auto lock* is set to *Off*.

Via EPG (◆P.6-6)

Use EPG to Record or view program.

Note

 If Key Lock is activated, TV program does not start even at the start time. However, recording starts.

Setting Timer via EPG

- 1 Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow$ Reservation list
- 2 Tap New $\rightarrow Via EPG$
 - See EPG application's help menu for operational instructions.

Manual Timer Settings

- 1 Tap Menu → *TV* → *Reservation list*
- 3 Under *Recording*, *On* or *Off* Set *On* to record, *Off* to watch.
- 4 Date → Once (→ Tap date field → Enter date) / Everyday / Selected days
 - If Selected days is selected, select day to reserve.
- 5 Start time \rightarrow Enter start time
- \bigcirc End time → Enter end time
- \bigcap Channel \rightarrow Select a channel
 - Tap Manual to enter a channel number.
- 8 Program → Enter program name
- Tap Save
- As the recording/viewer reservation time is neared, Alarm notification time is activated via Display and Alarm.

Exit all active functions; handset returns to Standby.

Viewing Reservation

- 1 Tap Menu → TV →
 Reservation list
- Reserve or Result → Select an item to view
 - Switch Reserve or Result tabs to view reservations before/after start time.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.6-13

- Editing Reservations
- Deleting Reservations
- Viewing Memory Remaining

₹ Settings

- Set Alarm (@P.14-15)
- Set Alert Tone (P.14-15)
- Set Volume (P.14-15)
- Set Vibration (P.14-15)
- Set Notification Light (P.14-16)
- Set Reminder Time (P.14-16)
- Set Alarm Duration (P.14-16)
- Set Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode (P.14-16)
- Set Save Location (P.14-17)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

While Watching TV

Receiving a Call

while watching TV

When the call ends, handset returns to TV window.

Rejecting a Call while Watching TV Tap Reject in Incoming call window

Viewing Program Information In TV window, tap Info.

- To View Program Details
 Select a program
- To Set Timer Recording

 Tap Record → Select a program
 - If you select a program that is currently on air, the recording immediately starts.
- To Set Timer Watching

Tap Program → Select a program

- To View Reservation List

 Tap Reserved list → Reserve/Result
- To View Free Memory Space
 Tap Memory remain → Phone/Memory card

Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View

In TV window, tap More → *Channel preview* → Select a channel

Changing Reception Areas

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Set channels* \rightarrow *Change area* \rightarrow Select an area

Setting Reception Areas

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow Set channels \rightarrow Change area \rightarrow Select an available area \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow Select a region \rightarrow Select a province \rightarrow Select a local area \rightarrow Tap Next \rightarrow Enter a name \rightarrow Tap OK

Set up to ten areas.

Updating Channels in the Area

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Tap Update

To Update All Channels

Update all → Select an area → Yes

- Delete saved channel then update starts.
- To Update Further

Update further → Select an area

- Add newly received channel; or overwrite saved channel with same No.
- Alternatively, tap More in TV window → Set
 channels → Channel switch → Tap Update
 → Update all or Update further → Yes as
 required.

Renaming Areas

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow Set channels \rightarrow Change area \rightarrow Tap Rename \rightarrow Select an area \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow Tap OK

Deleting Areas

In TV window, tap More → Set channels → Change area → Tap Delete → Select an area → Yes

Resetting All Channel Details

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Set channels* \rightarrow *Change area* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Reset* \rightarrow *Yes*

Viewing Area Details

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Set channels* \rightarrow *Change area* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Details* \rightarrow Select an area

Switching Channels

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Channel switch* → Select a channel

Changing Channel Numbers

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Set channels* \rightarrow *Channel switch* \rightarrow Tap Move \rightarrow *OK* \rightarrow Drag channel to desired location \rightarrow Tap OK

Deleting Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → Set channels → Channel switch → Tap Delete → Check channels to delete → Tap Delete → Yes

Viewing Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Channel switch* → Tap Details → Select a channel

Saving Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Save channel* → Select a channel → *Yes*

Setting Channel Selection

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Select setting* → Select an item

Setting Subtitle Display

In TV window, tap More → *Show subtitle* or *Hide subtitle*

- Show subtitle and Hide subtitle are TV program dependent features.
- Sometimes subtitle area does not indicate that subtitles are available.

Changing to Data Full Screen View

In TV window, tap More → *Data view*

• Tap TV for TV image.

Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Back to top*

Viewing TV Links

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow TV links \rightarrow Select target TV link \rightarrow Yes

• Tap TV links to connect to the network.

Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Headset

In TV window, tap More → *Transfer to headset*→ Drag device to connect to

- If Transfer to headset is set, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust on headset.
- Volume may change depending on volume settings on headphones.
- Only Bluetooth[®] stereo headphones are compatible with "SCMS-T" the copyright protection standard.
- Playback with monaural headset is unavailable.
- If no device is registered, search and register new device.
- To set handset as sound output device while watching TV, tap More → Transfer to Phone.

Setting Data Broadcast Preference

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Set broadcast data

To Set Recording Type

 $Set\ recording o ext{Select an item}$

To Select Save Location

Image location → Select an item

- **To Select Connection Notification Type**Notify connection → Select an item
- To Set Manufacture No. Notification
 Under Manufacture number, On or Off

To Delete Station Data

Delete station data \rightarrow Select \boxed{m} to delete \rightarrow **Yes**

•To delete all stations, tap Delete all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Setting Screen

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display

■ To Set Display Pictogram

Under Display pict, On or Off

To Set Landscape View

Landscape style → Select an item

■ To Set Portrait View

Portrait style → Select an item

To Adjust the Screen Brightness

Adjust the screen brightness in the brightness control field

• This setting only appears when the Backlight brightness is set to *Manual*.

Changing Sound Setting

In TV window, tap More → Settings → Sound

To Adjust Sound Quality

Sound mode → Select an item

To Select Language

Sound language → Select an item

To Set Smart Volume Control

Under Smart volume control, On or Off

Setting the Saving Location for Recorded Files

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Save recording to* \rightarrow Select an item

Handling Incoming Calls & Alarms

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Calls & Alarms \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Select action

Setting Auto Power Off

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Auto power off* \rightarrow Select an item

Starting Recording While Watching Current Programs

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *Start recording* \rightarrow Tap Save

 Alternatively, while recording, tap More in TV window → Stop recording → Yes to end recording.

Capturing Still Image while Watching Programs

In TV window, tap More → *Capture screen*

Ending TV Application

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow *End application*

Deleting TV Links

In TV window, tap More \rightarrow TV links \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check TV link to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

Alternatively, tap Menu → TV → TV links →
 Tap Delete → Check TV link to delete → Tap
 Delete → Yes.

Viewing TV Link Details

In TV window, tap More $\rightarrow TV links \rightarrow Tap$ Details \rightarrow Select a link to view

Alternatively, tap Menu → TV → TV links →
Tap Details → Select TV link to view detail.

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Daily/Weekly Timer Recording

Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Reservation \ list \rightarrow$ Tap New $\rightarrow Manual \rightarrow Date \rightarrow$ select Everyday or $Selected \ days$

• If **Selected days** is selected, select a day to set.

Entering Program Name

Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Reservation \ list \rightarrow$ Tap New $\rightarrow Manual \rightarrow Program \rightarrow$ Enter program name

Setting TV Alarm

Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow TV alarm$

To Set Alarm

Under *Alarm*, *On* or *Off*

To Set Alert Tone

Alert tone → Select a save location → Select a file

To Set Volume

Adjust volume in Volume field

To Set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item

To Set Light

Under Light, On or Off

To Set Reminder Time

Reminder time → Select an item

To Set Duration

Duration → Select an item

To Set Manner Mode Setting

Manner mode setting → Under Alarm sound/ Vibration, On or Off

Alternatively, in TV window, tap More → Settings
 → TV alarm.

Editing Reservations

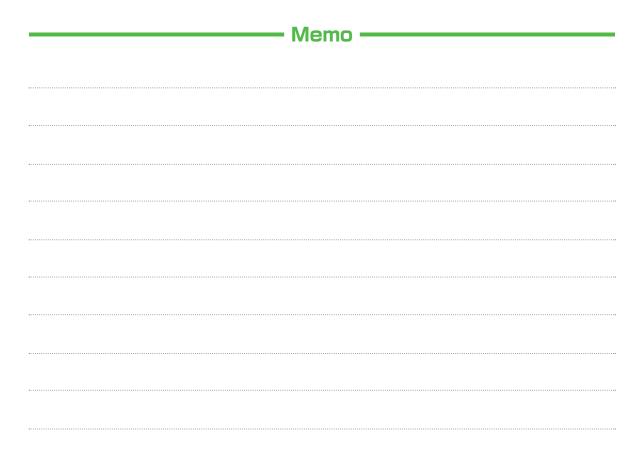
Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Reservation\ list \rightarrow$ Tap Edit \rightarrow Select a reservation \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.6-10 Manual Timer Settings \bigcirc 3) \rightarrow Tap Save

Deleting Reservations

Tap Menu \rightarrow TV \rightarrow Reservation list \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check reservations to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

Viewing Memory Remaining

Tap Menu \rightarrow *TV* \rightarrow *Reservation list* \rightarrow Tap Memory remain \rightarrow *Phone/Memory card*



Camera & Imaging

Capturing Image, Recording Movie & Editing7-2
Camera 7-3 Using Display as Viewfinder 7-3 Single Shot 7-5 Normal 7-6 Sub Camera 7-6 Scene 7-6 Face Shot 7-7 Smile Shot 7-7 Multi Shot 7-7 Photo Combination 7-8 Panorama Shot 7-8 Viewing Captured Images (Quick Play) 7-9
Video 7-10 Using Display as Viewfinder 7-10 Recording Video 7-11 Video Mode 7-12 Viewing Recorded Video (Quick Play) 7-12
Editing Still Images
Oekaki 7-13 Oekaki Anime 7-13 Oekaki Pict 7-14
Photo Library 7-15 Photo Album 7-15 Playing Photo Movie 7-16 Creating Flash® Slide 7-16
Printing Still Images 7-17 Printing via Bluetooth® 7-17 Printing via USB 7-18



Advanced Settings	7-18
Capturing Still Images	
Recording Videos	7-20
Oekaki	7-21
Photo Library	7-23

Capturing Image, Recording Movie & Editing

Use handset camera to capture images and record movies. Edit images and print them via Bluetooth® or USB-compatible printers.

Capturing Images & Recording Movie Clips

Select Scene, Multi Shot, etc. (�P.7-3). Record up to two hours per clip (�P.7-10).





Editing Images



Editing images: Resize or draw, etc. (�P.7-13).

Printing Images

Send images to printer via Bluetooth® or USB cable (�P.7-17).







Capturing options and corresponding image sizes:

Capture Mode	Image Size
Normal Scene Face shot Smile shot	8M (2448x3264/3264x2448) Wide 6M (1960x3264/3264x1960) 5M (1920x2560/2560x1920) Wide 4M (1536x2560/2560x1536) 2M (1200x1600/1600x1200) Wallpaper (480x800/800x480) 0.3M (480x640/640x480) Mail (240x320/320x240)
Multi shot Photo combi Panorama shot	Wallpaper (480x800/800x480) 0.3M (480x640/640x480)
Video	VGA (640x480) QVGA (320x240) QCIF (176x144) SQCIF (128x96) S! Mail (176x144) S! Mail (128x96)
Sub camera	0.3M (480x640/640x480) Mail (240x320/320x240)

Camera

For capturing still images, select Shooting mode: **Normal** to shoot single image and **Multi shot** or **Photo combi** to shoot multi-shot.

Captured images are saved to Pictures. Insert Memory Card to save images to Digital camera.

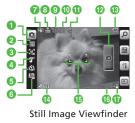
Note

Avoid getting too close to light. Eyesight may be affected.

Using Display as Viewfinder

Hold handset sideways to change Display to Landscape view. Hold handset vertically to change Display to Portrait view.

- The view does not change between Portrait and Landscape view during Multi-shot, Photo Combination, or video recording.
- Operations are described in Landscape view in this guide.





🛕 : Normal

🥨 : Sub camera

: Scene

: Auto*

🎘 : Landscape*

🕄 : Sports*

🥰 : Night*

👚 : Indoor*

: Beach/Snow*

👨 : Dusk/Dawn*

 \square : Text*

: Face shot

: Type (Dramatic)*

: Type (Natural)*

🚷 : Smile shot

: Type (Dramatic)*

: Type (Natural)*

: Multi shot

: 6/9 Images (six images)*

: 6/9 Images (nine images)*

: Speed (Fast)*

Speed (Normal)*

: Speed (Slow)*

🖫 : Speed (Manual)*

💶 : Photo combi

💌 : Panorama shot

*Shown between shooting mode and shooting size.

- 2 Size (the size varies on the view)
 - 翻: 8M (3264×2448) *
 - 🛗 : Wide 6M (3264×1960) *
 - : 5M (2560×1920) *
 - 🔛 : Wide 4M (2560×1536) *
 - : 2M (1600×1200) *
 - : Wallpaper (800×480)
 - : 0.3M (640×480)
 - 翮: Mail (320×240) *
 - *Only when the shooting mode is set to *Normal, Scene, Face* shot or *Smile shot*.
- 3 Focus

Macro : AF

- 4 Light
 - ③ : On ③ : Off
- 6 Timer
 -): Off (): 3 seconds
 - : 5 seconds : 10 seconds
- 6 White balance
 - 🕮 : Auto 🐫 : Daylight
 - 编: Incandescent 端: Fluorescent
 - Cloudy:
- Anti-shake
 - (: Anti-shake On
 - None: Anti-shake Off
 - If Wide dynamic range is On, Anti-shake is not available.

- 8 Quality
 - : Superfine
 - : Fine
 - : Normal
- ISO
 - 100 En : 100 En : 200 En : 400 En : 800
- 10 Exposure metering
 - []: Center-weight
 - []: Spot
- 11 Wide dynamic range
 - : Wide dynamic range On

None : Wide dynamic range Off

- If Anti-shake is On, Wide dynamic range is not available.
- Shutter
- Battery level
- 11 Accuracy for location
- 15 Focus frame
- (6) Number of remaining available shots
- Save to
 - 야 : Phone or ask each time
 -) : Memory Card or Digital camera
- Tapping the icons (2) to (6) at the left side of Viewfinder opens a menu.
- Tapping an image on Viewfinder shows or hides icons/the current settings.
- Focus is fixed for Sub camera.

Shooting Mode	Description
Normal	Capture still image and select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Scene	Capture still image that suits for taking night view or scene.
Face shot	Captures still images of faces.
Smile shot	Recognizes smiles, and captures image automatically.
Multi shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Photo combi	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine the images into one image.
Panorama shot	Ideal for landscape. Capture up to six images to automatically composite them into a single panoramic image.

Single Shot



Tapping icon area left of Viewfinder.



In Image settings, Tap *OK*



Tap Shutter



Save automatically or manually depending on *Auto save* settings (�P.14-18).

- Adjusting size and brightness are available for still images (�P.7-18).
- Attach captured image to message (�P.7-18).

Normal

Captured images are saved to Pictures. Insert Memory Card to save images (θ .3M images and larger) to Digital camera.

- When Memory Card is not inserted and save location is set to Digital camera, *Mail* images are automatically saved to Pictures folder.
- - Alternatively, tap Menu → Camera → Camera.
 Adjust settings before capturing as required (◆P.7-18).
- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder
 - Press 🕯 / 🖟 to zoom in/out.



- 3 🖅 / 🔤
 - Images are saved automatically.
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (♠P.14-18).
- Using Auto Focus

When *Focus* is set to *AF*, Auto Focus is available; automatically focusing a subject at the center of the frame. Press Allows to focus on. Then press to capture still image.

Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus.

Sub Camera

Capture still images of oneself.

- 1 Tap Menu → Camera → Sub camera
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.7-18).
- Frame image in Viewfinder
 - Zoom in/out cannot be performed.
 - Focus is fixed.
- 3 🖙 / 📷
 - Images are saved automatically.
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (♦ P.14-18).
- Changing mode from Sub camera to other is unavailable.
- Macro, Light, Anti-shake, ISO, Exposure metering, Wide dynamic range, Contrast, Saturation and Sharpness are not available for sub camera.

Scene

- 3 Tap icon area left of Viewfinder

 → Scene → Select a scene →

 OK
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.7-18).
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
 - 4 Frame image in Viewfinder
 - Press 🎒 / 🖥 to zoom in/out.
- 5 0 /
 - Images are saved automatically.
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (♦ P.14-18).
- Macro, Anti-shake, ISO, Exposure metering, Wide dynamic range, Contrast, Saturation, Sharpness, and brightness are not available for Scene.

Face Shot

- (2 + seconds)
- **3** Tap icon area left of Viewfinder → Type → Select type → OK
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.7-18).
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than the menu items.
- 4 Frame image in Viewfinder
- 5 0 /
 - Images are saved automatically.
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (♠P.14-18).
- Macro, Anti-shake, ISO, Exposure metering, Wide dynamic range, Contrast, Saturation, and Sharpness are not available for Face shot.

Smile Shot

- 1 □ (2 + seconds)
- **3** Tap icon area left of Viewfinder $\rightarrow Type \rightarrow Select type \rightarrow OK$
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.7-18).
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
- 4 Frame image in Viewfinder
- 5 0 /
 - Handset recognizes smile, and captures image automatically.
 - Images are saved automatically.
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (♠P.14-18).
- Macro, Timer, Anti-shake, ISO, Exposure metering, Wide dynamic range, Contrast, Saturation, and Sharpness are not available for Smile shot.

Multi Shot

- 1) (2 + seconds)
- 2 🙍 → Multi shot
- 3 Tap icon area left of Viewfinder

 → 6/9 photos → Select image

 count
- 4 Speed → Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual → OK
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required (⇒P.7-18).
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
- **5** Frame image in Viewfinder

 - - Images are saved automatically when capturing of images is over.
 - If *Speed* is set to *Manual*, repeat **(3)**. Tap to stop shooting and save the images. To redo, tap or press
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (�P.14-18).
- When Auto save is Off or On(Preview manual), all images captured using Multi shot are shown.
 After 3, tap Save to save.
- Anti-shake, Wide dynamic range, and Face link display are not available for Multi shot.

Photo Combination

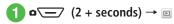
- \circ (2 + seconds)
- □ → Photo combi
- Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow Style \rightarrow Select a style \rightarrow OK
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required (**●**P.7-18).
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
- Frame image in Viewfinder → Apply selected frame and press • / Fig.
 - Press 🖣 / 🖥 to zoom in/out.
- Repeat 4 to capture images
 - To redo, tap
 ☐ or press CLEAR .
 - Images are saved automatically when capturing images end.
- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (�P.14-18).
- Anti-shake, Wide dynamic range, and Face link display are not available for Photo Combination.

Panorama Shot

- \circ (2 + seconds)
- ightharpoonup Panorama shot
 - Viewfinder appears in Landscape.
 - · Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.7-18).
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items
- Frame image in Viewfinder
 - Press 4 / 5 to zoom in/out.
- Move handset to capture an image (vertically or horizontally) → Adjust small white border inside big black border to automatically capture image
- 6 Repeat 5 to capture range
 - To create panorama image while capturing images, tap • 🖅 / 🔳 .
 - To redo, tap ⊃ or press CLEAR .
 - Alternatively, capturing six images automatically ends capturing.
 - Panorama images are created and saved automatically. Depending on the number of images to be captured, processing may take time.

- Set *Auto save* to *Off* to save manually (♠P.14-18).
- Anti-shake, Wide dynamic range, and Face link display are not available for Panorama shot.
- Move handset slowly to capture panoramic image.
- Panorama is ideal for capturing landscapes. Stand at least ten meters from subject. If too close panoramic image creation may fail.
- Low light or high contrast may hinder panoramic image creation.

Viewing Captured Images (Quick Play)



- 2 < / | ⇒ to view Image</p>
 - With Memory Card inserted, Memory card or Digital camera is selectable.
 - Saved media files are shown. Edit save location settings to switch between Phone/ Memory Card (P.14-18).
 - Alternatively, open still image from Data Folder (�P.12-4).

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.7-18

- Sending Captured Still Images
- Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
- Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
- Editing Captured Image
- Editing Quick Play Still Image
- Using Oekaki Anime with Quick Play Still Image
- Using Quick Play Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.
- Viewing Quick Play Image Details
- Playing Quick Play Image Slide Show
- Sending Quick Play Still Images
- Deleting Quick Play Images
- Exiting Quick Play

3 Settings

- Set Anti-Shake (TP.14-17)
- Activate/Cancel Auto Save (P.14-18)
- Set Contrast (@P.14-17)
- Set Saturation (P.14-17)
- Set Sharpness (P.14-17)
- Add/Eliminate Location Info (P.14-18)
- Select Quality (P.14-18)
- Set ISO (@P.14-18)
- Set Exposure Metering (P.14-18)
- Set Wide Dynamic Range (P.14-18)
- Set Save Location When Memory Card is Inserted
 P.14-18)
- Show/Hide Guideline (P.14-18)
- Set Face Link Display (P.14-18)
- Set Shutter Sound (P.14-18)
- Set Timer Sound (P.14-18)

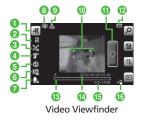
Video

Capture clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to Video folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach or insert into an S! Mail, set Shooting size to *S! Mail* (�P.7-20).

Note

Avoid getting too close to light. Eyesight may be affected.

Using Display as Viewfinder



- Mode
 - : Video
- Size

₩: VGA (640×480) *

🚟 : QVGA (320×240) *

₩: QCIF (176×144)

開: SQCIF (128×96)

- 疆: S! Mail (176×144)
- 開: S! Mail (128×96)
- * Only for Landscape view
- 3 Focus

Macro M: AF

4 Light

₹ : On ₹ : Off

- 5 Timer
 - : Off : 3 seconds

🖺 : 5 seconds 🕲 : 10 seconds

- 6 White balance
 - Auto 🐫 : Daylight
 - 🏫 : Incandescent 端 : Fluorescent
 - 🖺 : Cloudy
- Sound

(A): On (A): Off

- 8 Anti-shake
 - (: Anti-shake On

None: Anti-shake Off

- Quality
 - 🖺 : Superfine 🖺 : Fine 🗟 : Normal
- Focus frame
- Shutter

- 12 Battery level
- Progress bar
- Elapsed recording time/Available recording time
 - If Size is set to S! Mail, only the elapsed recording time appears.
- Expected video size/Available memory at the time you started the shooting
 - •If Size is set to *S! Mail*, the shooting data size/available shooting size appear.
- 16 Save to

⊳🗎 : Phone

▷ : Memory Card

- ullet Tapping the icons (2) to 7) at the left side of Viewfinder opens a menu.
- Tapping an image on Viewfinder shows or hides icons/the current settings.
- ullet Sub camera cannot capture videos.
- If recorded video size is too big or memory is low, recording ends before maximum recording time is reached.

Sho	oting Mode	Description
Video		Record video suitable for attaching to S! Mail or saving to handset.

Recording Video



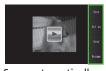
Tapping icon area left of Viewfinder.



In Video settings, Tap *OK*



Tap Shutter



Save automatically or manually depending on *Auto save* settings (♠P.14-19).

- Adjusting size and brightness are available for video (�P.7-20).
- Attach recorded video to message (�P.7-20).

Video Mode

Record up to two hours for one clip.

- Tap Menu \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Video camera
 - · Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.7-20).
- Frame image in Viewfinder
 - Press 🖣 / 🖥 to zoom in/out.
- - To pause while recording, tap III. To resume the recording, tap ______.
- - · Video is saved automatically. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
- Set Auto save to Off to save manually (♠P.14-19).
- Using Auto Focus

When Focus is set to AF. Auto Focus is available: automatically focusing a subject at the center of the frame (the focus is locked while recording a video).

Press A halfway to focus on. Then press all the way to start recording.

Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus.

• Wide dynamic range is not available for video.

Viewing Recorded Video (Quick Play)

- Tap Menu → Camera → Video camera → 🗈
- - Alternatively, check video from Data Folder (**♦**P.12-4).

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.7-20

- Sending Recorded Video
- Entering File Name of Recorded Video
- Using Recorded Video as Ringtone
- Using Quick Play Video as Ringtone
- Viewing Quick Play Video Details
- Sending Ouick Play Video
- Deleting Quick Play Video
- Exiting Ouick Play

₹ Settings

- Set Anti-Shake (P.14-17)
- Set Contrast (128 P.14-17)
- Set Saturation (P.14-17)
- Set Sharpness (P.14-17)
- Select Quality (TPP.14-19)
- Activate/Cancel Auto Save (TP.14-19)
- Set Save Location (TP.14-19)
- Show/Hide Guideline (P.14-19)
- Set Shutter Sound (TP P.14-19)
- Set Timer Sound (P.14-19)

Editing Still Images

Set image brightness, size and effect.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a folder
- Select a file
 - If confirmation appears, tap OK.
- 3 Tap Edit → *Image editor*
- 4 Edit image
 - To Set Effects on Image

Tap Effect \rightarrow *Filter, Style, Warp* or *Finger warp* \rightarrow Select an effect or drag image \rightarrow Tap Done

- For some effects, adjust the effect level.
- **To Adjust an Image Automatically**Tap Adjust → *Auto level*
- To Adjust an Image

 Tap Adjust → Brightness, Contrast or
- Tap Adjust → *Brightness*, *Contrast* or *Color* → Adjust image → Tap Done
- To Resize an Image

Tap Transform $\rightarrow Resize \rightarrow Select a size$

- After selecting Customize, enter Width and Height, and tap Done.
- To Rotate an Image

Tap Transform \rightarrow *Rotate* \rightarrow \bigcirc or \bigcirc \bigcirc Tap Done

To Flip an Image

Tap Transform \rightarrow *Flip* \rightarrow \nearrow or \nearrow \rightarrow Tap Done

To Crop an Image

Tap Transform \rightarrow *Crop* \rightarrow Drag frame and drop to area to crop \rightarrow Drag corner of frame to change its size \rightarrow Tap Done

- To undo, tap 🔁 .
- **5** Tap Save → Enter file name

Oekaki

Create Flash® videos or Pictograms from Oekaki data.

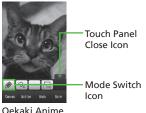
Oekaki Anime

Draw lines/shapes or insert text on still image. In addition, add motions to drawings to create Flash® images.

- 1 Tap Menu → Oekaki → Oekaki anime
- 2 Tap Canvas → Pictures or Digital camera → Select a still image
 - To select a file from Digital Camera folder, insert Memory Card.
- 3 Select image size
 - To Set Image to Wallpaper, etc.

 Normal (2MB)
 - •Images are automatically resized to smaller than 800 x 480 pixels.
 - To Attach Image to Messages to Send S! Mail (1MB) / S! Mail (300KB) / S! Mail (150KB)
 - •Images will be resized to sendable size.

- 4 Adjust settings as required → Tap OK
 - To Resize Images
 - **-**/**+**
 - To Rotate Image
 - (T) I
 - To Invert Image
 - **X**/**X**
- Draw



Window

To Draw Lines

Tap Mode switch icon \rightarrow *Pen* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a line type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a line width \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a line color \rightarrow Draw lines

To Draw Shapes

Tap Mode switch icon \rightarrow Shape \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a shape \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a line width \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a Contour color \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a color \rightarrow Draw shapes

Drag as if tracing a diagonal line.

To Insert Text

Tap Mode switch icon \rightarrow *Text* \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter text \rightarrow \blacksquare \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust font size \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a font style \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a font color \rightarrow Drag text to desired place

To Insert Stamps

To Add a Motion to the Pasted Stamp

Tap Motion → Tap a stamp to add a motion → Tap OK → Preset → Select a motion → Tap OK

- Each icon represents the current setting. Changing settings changes the corresponding icon.
- Press to toggle show/hide
 Touch Panel/Toolbar.

6 Tap More → *Preview* → Confirm the image



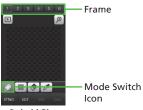
Preview

- Redrawing allows you to perform the following operations:
 - III / Pause/Resume
 III : Play from the beginning
- 7 Tap Save → Save as Flash® or Save as image → Enter file name
 - To save a file to *Memory card*, insert Memory Card.

Oekaki Pict

Create Pictograms from Oekaki data. Create animated Pictograms from multiple Oekaki data.

- 1 Tap Menu → Oekaki → Oekaki pict
- 2 Draw



Oekaki Pict Window

To Draw Picture by Hand

Tap Mode switch icon $\rightarrow Pen \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select color \rightarrow Draw

To Use Pict Stamp

Tap Mode switch icon \rightarrow *Pict stamp* \rightarrow Select stamp \rightarrow Tap Display

To Use Bucket Tool

Tap Mode switch icon \rightarrow *Bucket tool* \rightarrow Select color \rightarrow Tap Display to color

- 3 Tap 1 to 6 and repeat 2
- 4 → Preview pictogram
- 5 Tap Save → Enter file name

Advanced

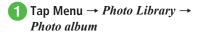
• Advanced Settings P.7-21

- Using Oekaki Anime with Camera Images
- Using Oekaki Anime with Colored Background
- Undoing Edit Operation of Oekaki Anime
- Setting Created Image to Wallpaper
- Saving & Sending Created Image
- Adding Blur Effect to Created Pictogram
- Inverting Created Pictogram
- Rotating Created Pictogram
- Moving Created Pictogram
- Copying pictogram to the next Frame
- Merging all of the pictograms into Frame
- Deleting selected Frame
- Deleting the entire Frame
- Undoing changes

Photo Library

Photo Album

View JPEG still images in handset or Memory Card.





- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select a file



- Some files may not appear.
- In folder list or file list, drag folder/file, tilt handset or swipe to scroll the screen.
- Touch and hold the portion of the image to be enlarged, and scroll the image in order to view it.

 To go back to normal view, tap OK/press
- •Scroll image to view next image.

Playing Photo Movie

Add background music and effects to Slide show.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Photo Library* → *Photo movie*
 - ullet Press $\begin{cases} \begin{cases}



Create a Slide Show

- 1 Tap Menu → *Photo Library* → *Photo movie*
- 2 Tap Add → Check still images → Tap Add → Tap OK
 - When Memory Card is inserted, select files from Pictures/Digital camera after tapping Add.
 - If Photo movie file exists, tap Playlist → Tap Add to view image.
- **③** Tap Effect → Select effect
 - When selecting effects, tap \(\bigvere \) to play effect.

- 4 Tap BGM → Tap Add → Check background music → Tap Add → Tap OK
 - Press \(\sigma_{clear}\) or \(\sigma_{op}\) → Yes to end creating Slide show.

Creating Flash® Slide

- 1 Tap Menu → Photo Library → Create Flash® slide
- Select file size
 - To Browse on Handset

 Normal (2MB)
 - To Attach to Message
 S! Mail (1MB) / S! Mail (300KB) /
 S! Mail (150KB)
 - Flash® slide size is resized to sendable size.



- 3 Tap Add → Check images → Tap Add
 - When Memory Card is inserted, select files from *Pictures/Digital camera* after tapping Add.
 - If file size exceeds limit, confirmation appears.
- 4 Effect → Select effect
 - When selecting effects, tap b to play effect.
- 5 Tap More → Save → Enter file name
 - Save location can be set to *Memory card* if inserted.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.7-23

- Changing Still Image Display
- Switch Folder
- Setting Opened Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.
- Sending Opened Still Image
- Editing Opened Still Image
- Using Oekaki Anime with Opened Still Image
- Deleting Opened File
- Deleting Photo Movie
- Viewing Detail for Photo Movie
- Deleting BGM
- Editing Photo Movie Screen Settings
- Setting Playback Speed for Photo Movie
- Setting playback sequence for Photo Movie
- Setting Sound Output for Photo Movie
- Setting Auto Off Time for Photo Movie
- Deleting Still Image from Flash® Slide
- Rearranging Still Images in Flash® Slide
- Previewing Flash® Slide
- Setting Created Flash® Slide as Wallpaper

Printing Still Images

Print still images saved on handset by connecting a printer via Bluetooth® or USB.

For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see printer User Manual.

Printing via Bluetooth®

Print images with Bluetooth® printer. Pair Bluetooth® printer beforehand.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location
- 2 Tap More $\rightarrow Print$
- 3 Via Bluetooth → Check files to print → Tap Print
 - 4) Drag device to connect to 🗓
 - If no device is registered, search and register new device (P.13-6).

- Set items as required
 - To Set Whether to Print a Frame or Not Under Frame, On or Off
 - To Set Paper Size

 Paper size → Select a paper size
 - To Set the Number of Copies

 Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)
 - To Set the Number of Pages to Print Per Sheet

Page format → Select an item

- When selecting Duplicate/Index, select Pages per sheet → Select a setting (1 to 16 up).
- To Set Whether to Print the Date or Not Under *Print date*, *On* or *Off*
- To Set Print Quality

 Print quality → Select an item
- 6 Tap Preview → Tap Print

Printing via USB

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location
- 2 Tap More $\rightarrow Print$
- \bigcirc Via USB \rightarrow Check files to print
- 4 Connect handset to a printer via USB → Tap Print
- 5 Set items as required
 - To Set Whether to Print a Border or Not Under *Border*, *On* or *Off*
 - To Set Paper Size

 Paper size → Select a paper size
 - To Set the Number of Copies

 Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)
 - To Set the Number of Pages to Print Per Sheet

Page format → Select an item

- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages* per sheet → Select a setting (1 to 16 up).
- To Set Whether to Print the Date or Not Under *Print date*, *On* or *Off*
- To Set Print Quality

 Print quality → Select an item
- Tap Preview → Tap Print

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Capturing Still Images

Adjusting Brightness

In Viewfinder, tap

→ Adjust brightness

Setting Shotting Size

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Size* \rightarrow Select item

Setting Macro

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Focus* \rightarrow *Macro*

Setting Light

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder $\rightarrow Light \rightarrow On$ or Off

Setting Timer

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder → *Timer* → Select item

Setting White Balance

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder → White balance → Select item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Effects* \rightarrow Select item

Sending Captured Still Images

After capturing still image, tap Send

- To operate above, set Auto save to Off or On (Preview manual) (●P.14-18).
- To Send via Message
 Via message → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)
- To Send via Bluetooth®

 Via Bluetooth → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)
- To Send via Infrared Via infrared (�P.13-3)
- To Send via IC Transmission
 Via IC transmission (�P.13-8)

Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
After capturing still image, tap Rename →
Enter file name

 To operate above, set Auto save to Off or On (Preview manual) (◆P.14-18).

Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.

After capturing still image, tap Set as

- To operate above, set Auto save to Off or On (Preview manual) (◆P.14-18).
- To Set Image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Operate the following as required:

Tap Rotate \rightarrow \bigcirc or \bigcirc to toggle direction Or.

Tap Zoom $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ or \bigcirc to adjust zoom level \rightarrow Tap Set

To Set Image to Incoming Image

Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry $(\mathfrak{O}P.2-18) \to \mathsf{Tap} \mathsf{Set}$

To Set Image to Alternative Picture

Still image → Tap OK

Editing Captured Image

After capturing still image, tap Edit

To Edit Image

Image editor \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-13 Editing Still Images \bigcirc)

To Use Oekaki Anime

Oekaki anime → (�P.7-14 Oekaki Anime 3)

 To operate above, set Auto save to Off or On (Preview manual) (♠P.14-18).

Viewing Quick Play Still Image

 $\bullet \longrightarrow (2 + \text{seconds}) \rightarrow \bigcirc / \bigcirc \text{to view}$ Image

 The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-18).

Editing Quick Play Still Image

 The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-18). Using Oekaki Anime with Quick Play Still Image

The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed.
 To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-18).

Using Quick Play Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.

 \bullet (2 + seconds) → \blacksquare → \bigcirc / \bigcirc to view image → Tap Set as

■ To Set Image to Wallpaper

 $Wallpaper
ightarrow ext{Operate the following as required:}$

Tap Rotate \rightarrow \bigcirc or \bigcirc to toggle direction Or,

Tap Zoom \rightarrow \bigcirc or \bigcirc to adjust size \rightarrow Tap Set

To Set Image to Incoming Image

Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry (•P.2-18) → Tap Set

To Set Image to Alternative Picture Still image → Tap OK

The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed.
 To change the media, change Save to (◆P.14-18).

Viewing Quick Play Image Details

The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed.
 To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-18).

Playing Quick Play Image Slide Show

 \bullet (2 + seconds) \rightarrow \triangleright \rightarrow Tap Slide show

- Press \(\text{cleas}\) during playback to cancel Slide show.
- The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed.
 To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-18).

Sending Quick Play Still Images

 \bullet \bigcirc (2 + seconds) → \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc / \bigcirc to view image → Tap Send

To Send via Message

 $Via\ message$ → (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Bluetooth®

 $Via \ Bluetooth$ → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared Via infrared (♠P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission Via IC transmission (�P.13-8)

The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed.
 To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-18).

Deleting Quick Play Images

The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed.
 To change the media, change Save to (◆P.14-18).

Exiting Quick Play

Tap Back to Camera during Quick Play

Recording Videos

Adjusting Brightness

In Viewfinder, tap

→ Adjust brightness

Setting Shooting Size

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Size* \rightarrow Select item

Setting Macro

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Focus* \rightarrow *Macro*

Setting Light

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder $\rightarrow Light \rightarrow On/Off$

Setting Timer

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Timer* \rightarrow Select item

Setting White Balance

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder → White balance
→ Select item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Effects* \rightarrow Select item

Setting Sound Recording

Tap icon area left of Viewfinder \rightarrow *Sound* \rightarrow *On/Off*

Viewing Recorded Video before Saving

After recording video,

To operate the above, set Auto save to Off (◆P.14-19).

Sending Recorded Video

After recording video, tap Send

To operate the above, set Auto save to Off (♠P.14-19).

To Send via Message
Via message → (♠P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Infrared
Via infrared (◆P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission Via IC transmission (�P.13-8)

Entering File Name of Recorded Video

After recording video, tap Rename → Enter file name

To operate the above, set Auto save to Off (◆P.14-19).

Using Recorded Video as Ringtone

After recording video, tap Set as

To operate the above, set Auto save to Off (◆P.14-19).

To Set Video to Voice Ringtone Voice ringtone

To Set Video to Video Ringtone Video ringtone To Set Video to Caller Ringtone

Caller ringtone → Search and select Phone Book entry (�P.2-18)

Viewing Recorded Video via Quick Play

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Camera* \rightarrow *Video camera* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc / \bigcirc to select a video \rightarrow \bigcirc

 The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (◆P.14-19).

Using Quick Play Video as Ringtone

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Camera* \rightarrow *Video camera* \rightarrow \triangleright \rightarrow \bigcirc / \bigcirc to select a video \rightarrow Tap Set as

- To Set Video to Voice Ringtone Voice ringtone
- To Set Video to Video Ringtone Video ringtone
- To Set Video to Caller Ringtone

 Caller ringtone → Search and select Phone Book entry (♠P.2-18)
- The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-19).

Viewing Quick Play Video Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Video camera \rightarrow \square \rightarrow \bigcirc / \bigcirc to select a video \rightarrow Tap Details

 The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (◆P.14-19).

Sending Quick Play Video

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Camera* \rightarrow *Video camera* \rightarrow \bigcirc \nearrow to select a video \rightarrow Tap Send

To Send via Message Via message → (♠P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Infrared Via infrared (�P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission Via IC transmission (♠P.13-8)

 The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-19).

Deleting Quick Play Video

Tap Menu \rightarrow Camera \rightarrow Video camera \rightarrow $\square \rightarrow$ \bigcirc to select a video \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

 The data saved in media set as Save to will be viewed. To change the media, change Save to (♠P.14-19).

Exiting Quick Play

Tap Back to Camcorder during Quick Play

Oekaki

Using Oekaki Anime with Camera Images

Tap Menu → *Oekaki* → *Oekaki anime* → Tap Canvas → *Take photo* → Capture still image → das as required → *Normal(2MB)* / *S! Mail(1MB)* / *S! Mail(300KB)* / *S! Mail(150KB)*

→ Set items as required

To Resize Images - / + → Tap OK

To Rotate Images

✓ / 🔯 → Tap OK

To Invert Images

Using Oekaki Anime with Colored Background

Tap Menu → *Oekaki* → *Oekaki anime* → Tap Canvas → *Color canvas* → Select a background color

Editing Entered Text

In Oekaki Anime window, tap mode switch icon \rightarrow *Text* \rightarrow Tap text you already entered \rightarrow Tap \bigcirc / \bigcirc / \bigcirc Change the Text, Font size, Font style or Font color

Adding Emoticon Clip Art to Still Images

In Oekaki Anime window, tap mode switch icon \rightarrow *Stamp* \rightarrow **El** \rightarrow *Photo stamp*

To Select from Saved Still Images

Pictures or **Digital camera** → Select a still image for a stamp → Tap Yes/No as required → Tap area to paste it

 To select a file from Digital Camera folder, insert Memory Card.

To Capture an Image with Camera

Take photo → Capture a still image → as required → Yes/No as required → Tap an area to paste it as a stamp

- Each icon represents the current setting. Changing settings changes the corresponding icons.
- Tap button with current photo stamp shown to use another stamp.

Adding Motions to Lines or Shapes You Drew

In Oekaki Anime window, tap Motion → Drag to enclose a line or shape to add a motion → Tap OK → *Preset* → Select a motion → Tap OK

• Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the area to add the motion.

Moving along with a Line

In Oekaki Anime window, tap Motion

For Lines or Shapes

Drag to enclose the desired line or shape \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow *Motion line* \rightarrow Draw a motion line starting from the selected line or shape \rightarrow *Preview* \rightarrow Tap OK

 $\bullet\,\mbox{Drag}$ as if tracing a diagonal line of the desired area.

For Stamps

Tap the desired stamp \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow *Motion line* \rightarrow Draw a motion line starting from the selected stamp \rightarrow *Preview* \rightarrow Tap OK

• To delete the motion line and draw again, tap Undo.

Deleting Motions

In Oekaki Anime window, tap Motion \rightarrow Tap a line, shape, or stamp to remove the motion \rightarrow Tap OK

To Delete Preset

Preset → 🍇 → Tap OK

To Delete Motion Line

Motion line \rightarrow Off \rightarrow Tap OK

Undoing Edit Operation of Oekaki Anime

In Oekaki Anime window, tap Undo

 Undo the last operation performed in Oekaki Anime window such as drawing a line or selecting a setting option.

Deleting Lines/Shapes/Text/Stamps

In Oekaki Anime window, tap Mode switch icon → *Delete*

For Lines or Shapes without Any Motion Drag to enclose the line or shape to delete

- Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the area to delete
- For Lines or Shapes with Motions
 Tap a line or shape to delete
- For Text or Stamps

 Tap text or stamp to delete

Setting Created Image to Wallpaper

In Oekaki Anime window, tap More \rightarrow *Preview* \rightarrow Tap Set as Wallpaper \rightarrow *Flash*®/*Image* \rightarrow Enter file name

Saving & Sending Created Image

In Oekaki Anime window, tap More \rightarrow *Preview* \rightarrow tap Send

To Send via Message

Via message → Flash®/Image → (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Flash®/Image → (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Infrared

 $Via\ infrared$ → Flash®/Image → (\bigcirc P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Flash®/Image → $(\Theta P.13-8)$

Changing Saving Location for Created Images

In Oekaki Anime window, tap More → Settings → Under Save to, Phone, Memory card, or Ask each time → Tap OK

• When no Memory Card is inserted, the saving location is automatically set to **Phone**.

Setting Oekaki Process Playback Speed

In Oekaki Anime window, tap More \rightarrow **Settings** \rightarrow Adjust Oekaki process playback speed \rightarrow Tap OK

Compressing Files

In Oekaki Anime window, tap More → *Settings* → Under *File compression*, *High/Normal* → Tap OK

Deleting portions of Pictograms

In Oekaki Pict window, tap \bigcirc \rightarrow Drag portion of pictogram

Changing Bucket Tool Color to Color Used by Canvas

In Oekaki Pict window, tap \nearrow \rightarrow Tap the spot to color

Adding Blur Effect to Created Pictogram

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Effect \rightarrow *Blur* \rightarrow \frown / \bigodot Tap OK

Rotating Created Pictogram

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Effect \rightarrow *Rotate* \rightarrow Tap OK

Inverting Created Pictogram

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Effect \rightarrow *Flip* \rightarrow Tap OK

Moving Created Pictogram

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Edit \rightarrow *Move* \rightarrow \bigcirc / \bigcirc / \bigcirc / \bigcirc Tap OK

Copying pictogram to the next Frame

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Edit → Copy to next

- Copied when next Frame exists.
- Frame will be overwritten.

Merging all of the pictograms into Frame

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Edit → Copy to all

- Selected pictogram is copied.
- Frame will be overwritten

Deleting selected Frame

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Edit → Clear selected

Deleting the entire Frame

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Edit → Reset

Undoing changes

In Oekaki Pict window, tap Undo

Zooming in on pictograms for editing

/ a to move to edit location Tap to Zoom out.

Photo Library

Changing Still Image Display

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → → Folder/Month/Date

Switch Folder

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → → Pictures/Memory card/Digital camera

Setting Opened Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Set as

To Set Image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Tap Set

To Set Image to Incoming Image

Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry (♠P.2-18) → Tap Set

To Set Image to Alternative Picture Still image → Tap OK

Sending Opened Still Image

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Send

To Send via Message

Via message \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Bluetooth®

 $Via \ Bluetooth \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.13-3 \ Sending \ Data \ 2)$

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared (♠P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission (€P.13-8)

Editing Opened Still Image

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit \rightarrow Image editor \rightarrow (♠P.7-13 Editing Still Images 4)

Using Oekaki Anime with Opened Still Image

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit → Oekaki anime → (�P.7-13 Oekaki Anime 3)

Deleting Opened File

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo album → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Delete → Yes

Deleting Photo Movie

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo movie → Tap Playlist → Tap Remove → Check image to delete → Tap Remove → Yes

Viewing Detail for Photo Movie

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo movie → Tap Playlist → Tap Details → Select image to be viewed

Deleting BGM

Tap Menu → Photo Library → Photo movie → Tap BGM → Tap Remove → Check BGM to delete → Tap Remove → Yes

Editing Photo Movie Screen Settings

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Photo Library* \rightarrow *Photo movie* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *Display*

- To Set Display Pict Settings
 Under Display pict, On / Off
- To Set Repeat Setting
 Under Repeat, On / Off
- To Enlarge Image
 Under Enlarge image, On / Off

Setting Playback Speed for Photo Movie

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Photo Library* \rightarrow *Photo movie* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *Display speed* \rightarrow Select an item

Setting playback sequence for Photo Movie

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Photo Library* \rightarrow *Photo movie* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *Order* \rightarrow Select an item

Setting Sound Output for Photo Movie

Tap Menu → *Photo Library* → *Photo movie* → Tap Settings → *Sound output* → Select an item

Setting Auto Off Time for Photo Movie

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Photo Library* \rightarrow *Photo movie* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *Auto power off* \rightarrow Select an item

Deleting Still Image from Flash® Slide

In Create Flash® Slide window, tap Remove → Check images to delete → Tap Remove → *Yes*

Rearranging Still Images in Flash® Slide

In Create Flash® Slide window, tap Change order \rightarrow Drag and drop still image to desired position \rightarrow Tap OK

Previewing Flash® Slide

In Create Flash® Slide window, tap More → *Preview*

Setting Created Flash® Slide as Wallpaper

In Create Flash® Slide window, tap More → **Set as wallpaper** → Enter file name

Sending Created Flash® Slide

In Create Flash® Slide window, tap More → **Send**

To Send via Message

To Send via Bluetooth®

To Send via Infrared Via infrared → (�P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → (�P.13-8)

Setting for Flash® Slide

In Create Flash® Slide window, tap More → **Settings**

To Enlarge Image

Under Enlarge, On / Off

To Set Playback Speed

Display speed → Select an item

To Set Repeat Setting Under Repeat, On / Off

To Set Save Location

Save to \rightarrow Select an item

 When Memory Card is not inserted, Flash® Slide shows are saved automatically to *Phone*.

Media Player

Using Media Player	8-2
Downloading Media Files Downloading Music & Movies Saving WMA/WMV Media Files from Handset to Memory Card Saving other Media Files to Phone or Memory Card	8-3 8-3
Playing Music	8-4
Playing Music	8-5
Playing Movie	8-6
Using Playlist	
Creating PlaylistPlaying Playlist	
Streaming	8-8
Streaming from Page Link	8-8
Entering URL	8-8 o o
Accessing from Bookmark	8-8
Advanced Settings	8-9
Music Playback	
Movie Playback	
Streaming	6-12



Using Media Player

This handset features a Media Player. Download media files via Yahoo! Keitai or create personal playlists.

Playing Media Files



Play music or movies via Media Player (�P.8-5, P.8-7). Select a music or movie file from folders or playlists.

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, or 3gp (sound only)), SoftBank Music Contents (smc), Windows Media® Audio (wma)
Movie	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), H.263, H.264, Windows Media® Video (wmv)

To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from Ring songs · tones.
 Even compatible files must be saved in Ring songs · tones to play.

Note

Movie files exceeding $640 \times 480 \text{ (mp4 or 3gp)}$ or $320 \times 240 \text{ (wmv)}$ in resolution cannot be played.

Downloading Media Files



Access Yahoo! Keitai to download music or movies. Download movie content or play it back in Streaming (�P.8-3).

Creating Playlists



Add your favorite music or movie to a playlist and create your own music or movie album (�P.8-7).

Downloading Media Files

Access Yahoo! Keitai to download music or movies and copy them to handset.

Downloading Music & Movies

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media*
- 2 Download music or movie
 - To Download Music

 Music → All music → Download music
 - To Download Movie

 Movie → All movies → Download

 movies

Note

 Downloading music or movies may incur high Packet Communication charges since they contain a large volume of data.

Saving WMA/WMV Media Files from Handset to Memory Card

- 1 Insert Memory Card into handset
- Connect handset to a PC via USB
- 3 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Connectivity → USB mode →
 MTP synch mode → Yes
- 4 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 5 Save PC WMA/WMV Files to the specified Memory Card folder
- 6 While connecting, tap Exit
- Remove USB cable
- Receiving calls or messages is not available in the *MTP synch mode*.
- Save files to the following folders by type:

WMA file: WMAudio WMV file: WMVideo

Saving other Media Files to Phone or Memory Card

To convert music or movie file formats, software is necessary.

- SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee proper operation with any specific software.
- For software specifications or operations, see SoftBank Mobile Website.
- 1 Insert Memory Card into handset
 - Follow instructions (�P.12-10).
- Save files to the following folders by type:
 Music file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Movie file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Movie

- If you copy WMA/WMV music or movie directly to Memory Card, you may not able to play them.
 Make sure to save them to Memory Card through the MTP synch mode (◆P.8-3).
- After saving files, insert Memory Card into handset and load saved files to play the files.

Playing Music

Folder structure is as follows

Folder	Description
Last played/Now playing	Last played or currently played file
All music	Up to 9999 music files
Playlists	View playable file in Music in created folders
Artists	All music files by Artist
Albums	All music files by Album
Genres	All music files by Genre
Folder	All files in Ring songs tones and Music folders of Data Folder and Memory Card, as well as WMAudio on Memory Card
Recent music	100 most recently played files (most recent first)
Most played music	100 most frequently played files (most frequent first)

• Files on Memory Card may take longer to load.

Media Player Music Window



Music Playback

- Repeat mode
 - Tap to toggle settings.
 - : Off
 - : One
 - : Repeat all
- 2 Setting Shuffle Tap to toggle settings.
 - : Shuffle On
- 3 Setting Sound effects
 - Tap to set Sound effects and mood.
 - This is not available when using Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.
- 4 Spectrum analyzer
 - · Tap to toggle spectrum analyzer.
 - This is not available when using Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.

- **5** Title (file name when title is unknown)
- Artist's name
- File number/Total number of files
- Sound effects
- Progress bar Drag or tap to specify start point.
- 10 Elapsed playing time
- Copy protection
- 12 Volume level Tap to adjust volume.
- 13 Total playing time
- Operation keys
 - : Stop
 - Play:
 - : Pause
 - : Cue/Previous song
 - Tap within three seconds after playback starts to play previous song. Tap after three seconds to play beginning of current song.
 - Touch and hold : Rewind
 - : Next song
 - Touch and hold : Fast forward
- Rotate handset 90 degrees to automatically rotate Display image into Landscape view. Operations are the same as those in Portrait view.

Playing Music

- Play a file
 - To Play Most Recently Played File

 Last played
 - While playing, Last played will be Now playing.
 - To Select from All Files
 - *All music* \rightarrow Select a file
 - To Select from Playlists

 Playlists → Select a playlist → Select a file
 - To Select from List of Artists

 Artists → Select an Artist → Select a file
 - To Select from List of Albums

 Albums → Select an Album → Select a file
 - To Select from List of Genres

 Genres → Select a genre → Select a file
 - To Select from Folder List

 Folder → Select a folder → Select a file
 - To Select from List of Recently Played Files

Recent music → Select a file

To Select from List of Often Played Files

Most played music → Select a file

- Tap ▶ next to **All music** or a playlist name to play all files in the list.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in All music list and Folder list with <a>♠.
- While Media Player is active, press
 repeatedly to hide Music playback window. Also, press
 to choose whether to exit Music playback window or keep playing the music as BGM.
- In Standby, press o to end Media Player. End confirmation appears, choose **Yes**.
- •When a list appears while playing music, tap 1 to return to Music playback window.
- If a call arrives while playing music in Music playback window, playback pauses and handset rings. After call ends, paused Music playback window returns.
 For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.
- Alarm time arrives during playing music in Music playback window, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm and to clear the indicator. For BGM, playback resumes.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.8-9

- Searching File by Text
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing/Downloading Content Key
- Viewing File Details
- Deleting Files from Playlist
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Stopping Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth® -Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

₹ Settings

- Set Repeat Mode (P.14-19)
- Set Shuffle (P.14-19)
- Set Sound Effects (TP.14-19)
- Set Mood (@P.14-19)

Playing Movie

Folder structure is as follows

Folder	Description
Last played	Play most recently played file
All movies	View all playable file in Movie up to 9999
Playlists	View playable file in Movie in created folders
Folder	View files in Movie folders of Data Folder and Memory Card, as well as WMVideo on Memory Card
Recent movie	View up to 100 most recently played file (most recently played file appears first)
Most played movie	View up to 100 most frequently played file (most frequently played file appears first)

Media Player Movie Window



- Repeat mode
 - Tap to toggle settings.
 - : Off
 - ा : One
 - 🖙 : Repeat all
- 2 Setting Shuffle Tap to toggle settings.
 - Shuffle On
 Shuffle Off
 Shuffle Off
 Shuffle Off
 Shuffle Off
 Shuffle Off
 Shuffle Off
- 3 Setting Sound effects Tap to change Sound effects/ mood settings.
- 4 Display size Tap to change setting.
- 5 Playback speed Tap to change setting.

- **6** Movie title (or file name if no title) and author
- Copy protection
- 8 File number/Total number of files
- 9 Progress bar Drag or tap to specify start point.
- 10 Elapsed playing time
- 1 Volume level Tap to adjust volume.
- 12 Total playing time
- (13 Operation keys : Stop
 - : Play
 - : Pause
 - : Cue/Previous movie
 - Tap within three seconds after playback starts to play previous movie. Tap after three seconds to play beginning of current movie.

Touch and hold **K** : Rewind

: Next movie

Touch and hold : Fast forward

- Rotate handset 90 degrees to automatically rotate Display image into Landscape view. Operations are the same as those in Portrait view.
- In Portrait view, tap movie for icons 1 to 5.
 In Landscape view, tap movie for items other than image, including playback navigation or progress bar.

Playing Movie

- Tap Menu → Media → Movie
- Play a file
 - To Play Most Recently Played File

 Last played
 - To Select from All Files

 All movies → Select a file
 - To Select from Playlists

 Playlists → Select a playlist → Select a file
 - To Select from Folder List

 Folder → Select a folder
 - To Select from List of Recently Played Files

Recent movie → Select a file

To Select from List of Often Played Files

Most played movie → Select a file

- Tapping ▶ next to *All movies* or a playlist name plays all files in the list.
- ●When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in All movies list and Folder list with ▶.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.8-11

- Searching File by Text
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing/Downloading Content Key
- Viewing File Details
- Deleting Files from Playlist
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Stopping Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth® -Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

₹ Settings

- Set Repeat Mode (P.14-19)
- Set Shuffle (@P.14-19)
- Set Backlight (TP P.14-20)
- Set Portrait Style (P.14-20)
- Set Landscape Style (P.14-20)
- Show/Hide Movie Thumbnails (P.14-20)
- 3110W/Tilde Movie Tildifibilalis (US) 1.14-20

Using Playlist

Create Playlist to make your own album.

Creating Playlist

Create up to 20 playlists and 100 files in each playlist.

- 1 Tap Menu → Media → Music or Movie → Playlists → Tap Create
- 2 Enter playlist name
- 3 Select created playlist
- 4 Tap Add
- 5 Check files to save → Tap Add to playlist

Playing Playlist

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Media \rightarrow Music or Movie \rightarrow Playlists
- Select a playlist
- Select a file
- Playlist cannot be played if included file has been deleted, or file is added from Memory Card and Memory Card is removed. Insert Memory Card and load file to play.

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is being downloaded. Access compatible files via page links, etc.

Streaming from Page Link

- Open a page containing a page link
- Select a link

Entering URL

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media* → Streaming → Enter URL
 - Default: "rtsp://" is set.
- 2 Enter URL



Streaming

 Operation while streaming is the same as that of Media Player (◆P.8-4, P.8-6).

Note

 Even if streaming is paused, Internet connection remains active, incurring Packet Communication charges.

Accessing from Bookmark

Save up to 20 links in Streaming Bookmark.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media* → Streaming → Bookmark
- Select a bookmark

Accessing from History

Hold 20 previously accessed links.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media* → *Streaming* → *History*
- 2 Select history

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.8-12

- Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming
- Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark
- Accessing Previously Accessed Stream
- Editing Streaming Bookmark URL
- Saving Streaming Bookmark via Direct Entry
- Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL
- Editing History of Streaming
- Deleting History of Streaming

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Music Playback

Searching File by Text

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *All music* \rightarrow Tap Search files \rightarrow Check *Title* or *Artist* \rightarrow Tap Search field \rightarrow Enter title or artist name \rightarrow Tap Search

Adding Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → Media → Music → All music → Tap Add to playlist → Check a file to add → Tap Add to playlist → Select a playlist

To create a new playlist and add files to it. Tap
 Create in the window to add files → Enter playlist
 name → Select a created playlist.

Sending Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *All music* \rightarrow Tap Send

To Send via Message

Via message → Select a file \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check files → Tap Send (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared \rightarrow Check files \rightarrow Tap Send (\bigcirc P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check files → Tap Send (�P.13-8)

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *All music* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Set as* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Select an item

- Alternatively, tap Menu → Set as while music is paused in Music playback window.
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to Ringtone.

Sorting Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *All music* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Sort by* \rightarrow Select an item

- Perform the same operation to files in *Folder*.
- After returning to Standby, files will be resorted to default.

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *All music* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Download Content key* \rightarrow Select a file

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *All music* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Details* \rightarrow Select a file

- Alternatively, during playback, Tap Menu → *Details*.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Deleting Files from Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Select a playlist \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check file to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Select a playlist \rightarrow Tap Change order \rightarrow Confirmation appears, *Never show this* \rightarrow *OK* as required \rightarrow Touch and hold file to select \rightarrow Drag to desired location \rightarrow Tap OK

Renaming Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Tap Rename \rightarrow Select a playlist \rightarrow Enter playlist name

Deleting Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Music* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check a playlist \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

 If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Stopping Playback

During playback, tap

Switching to Bluetooth® -Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

In Music playback window, tap Menu \rightarrow *Transfer to headset* \rightarrow Drag device to connect to $\boxed{\mathbb{U}}$

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- When Transfer to headset is set, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust with the headphones.
- Volume may change depending on volume settings with headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch output to handset while playing music, tap Menu → Transfer to phone.
- When headphone is registered or connected before, switching to Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone is available without dragging device to connect to

Setting Repeat Mode

In Music playback window, tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Repeat mode \rightarrow Select an item

Setting Shuffle

In Music Playback window, tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Under *Shuffle*, *On* or *Off*

Setting Sound effects

In Music playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Sound effects** → Select an item → Tap OK

- This is not available when you use a Bluetooth[®]
 -compatible stereo headphone.
- Alternatively, in Music playback window, tap to set.

Setting Mood

In Music playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Adjust Mood in Mood field

- If Sound effects is set to Off or Manual, Mood can not be set.
- Alternatively, in Music playback window, tap to set.

Connecting Web Link

In Music playback window, tap Menu → Connect web link → Yes

• This is not available when web link does not exist.

Viewing Lyrics

In Music playback window, tap Menu $\rightarrow \textit{View}$ Ivrics

• This is not available when music file is compatible with this function.

Movie Playback

Searching File by Text

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap Search files \rightarrow Check *Title* or *Author* \rightarrow Tap Search field \rightarrow Enter title or author's name \rightarrow Tap Search

Adding Files to Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap Add to playlist \rightarrow Check a file to add \rightarrow Tap Add to playlist \rightarrow Select a playlist

 To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create in the window to add files → Enter playlist name → Select playlist.

Sending Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap Send

To Send via Message

Via message → Select a file → (♦ P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check a file → Tap Send (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared \rightarrow Check a file \rightarrow Tap Send (\bigcirc P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check files → Tap Send (P.13-8)

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Set as* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Select an item

- Alternatively, tap Menu → Set as in Movie playback window.
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to Ringtone.

Sorting Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Sort by* \rightarrow Select an item

ullet Perform the same operation to files in Folder.

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Download Content key* \rightarrow Select a file

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *All movies* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Details* \rightarrow Select a file

- Alternatively, in Movie playback window, tap Menu
 → Details
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Deleting Files from Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Select playlist \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check file to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Select a playlist \rightarrow Tap *Change order* \rightarrow Confirmation appears, *Never show this* \rightarrow *OK* as required \rightarrow Touch and hold file to select \rightarrow Drag to desired location \rightarrow Tap OK

Renaming Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Tap Rename \rightarrow Select a playlist \rightarrow Enter playlist name

Deleting Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Movie* \rightarrow *Playlists* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check a playlist \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

 If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Stopping Playback

During playback, tap 🔲

Switching to Bluetooth® -Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → *Transfer to headset* → Drag device to connect to ①

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- When Transfer to headset is set, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust with the headphones.
- Volume may change depending on volume settings on headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch output to handset while playing movie, tap Menu → Transfer to phone.

Setting Repeat Mode

In Movie playback window, tap Menu \rightarrow **Settings** \rightarrow **Repeat mode** \rightarrow Select an item

Setting Shuffle

In Movie playback window, tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Under *Shuffle*, *On* or *Off*

Setting Backlight

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → *Settings* → *Backlight* → Select an item

Setting Portrait Style

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Portrait** style → Select an item

Setting Landscape Style

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → Settings → Landscape style → Select an item

Setting Thumbnail Display

In Movie playback window, tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Under Thumbnail display, On or Off

Accessing/Ignoring Linked Information

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Under **Web link**, **On** or **Off**

Setting Sound Effect

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → Settings → Sound Effect → Select an item

- This is not available when you use a Bluetooth[®]compatible stereo headphone.
- Alternatively, in Movie playback window, tap

Setting Mood

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Adjust Mood in Mood field

- If Sound effects is set to Off or Manual, Mood can not be set.
- Alternatively, in Movie playback window, tap

Streaming

Playing the Last Played Stream

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Streaming* \rightarrow *Last played*

Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming

While streaming, tap Menu → Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Save

Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark

While streaming, tap View bookmark → Select bookmark

Accessing Previously Accessed Stream

While streaming, tap Menu → Tap View history → Select history

Editing Streaming Bookmark URL

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Streaming* \rightarrow *Bookmark* \rightarrow Tap Edit bookmark \rightarrow Select bookmark to edit \rightarrow Tap Title field \rightarrow Edit title \rightarrow Tap URL field \rightarrow Edit URL \rightarrow Tap Save

Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap View bookmark → Edit bookmark → Select a bookmark to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save.

Saving Streaming Bookmark via Direct Entry

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Streaming* \rightarrow *Bookmark* \rightarrow Tap Add bookmark \rightarrow Tap Title field \rightarrow Enter title \rightarrow Tap URL field \rightarrow Enter URL \rightarrow Tap Save

Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap
View bookmark → Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title
field → Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL
→ Tap Save.

Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Streaming* \rightarrow *Bookmark* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check bookmarks to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu →
 Tap View bookmark → Tap Delete → Check
 bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → Yes.
- If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Editing History of Streaming

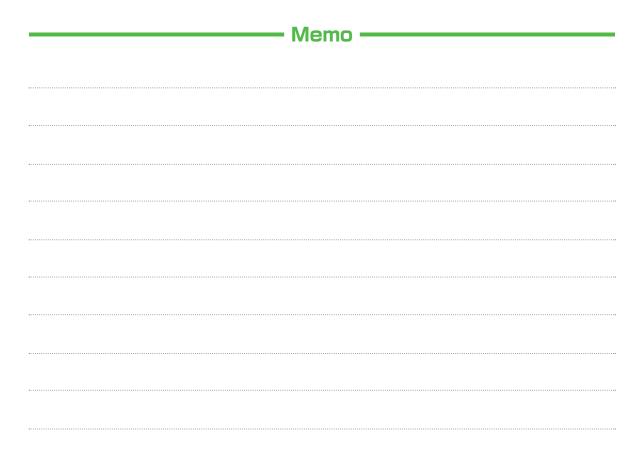
Tap Menu → *Media* → *Streaming* → *History* → Tap Edit history → Select history to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save

 Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap View history → Tap Edit history → Select history to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save.

Deleting History of Streaming

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Media* \rightarrow *Streaming* \rightarrow *History* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check URL to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap
 View history → Tap Delete → Check URL to delete
 → Tap Delete → Yes.
- If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.



Entertainment

Entertainment Functions	9-
S! Applications (Japanese) Downloading S! Appli. Activating S! Appli Exiting S! Appli.	9- 9-
Games Crayon Physics Number Place World. Touch Golf Pangya Hidden Catch4 Dice Random Ball.	9- 9- 9- 9-
S! Quick News (Japanese)	9- 9- 9-
Free Content	9-
S! Contents Store	
S! Information Channel Service Registration New Received Information Using Weather Indicator.	9- 9-
S! Friend's Status Saving Members. Changing My Status Deleting Member	9- 9-

About Near Chat Using Near Chat. Sending Near Chat Request Receiving Near Chat Request	9-11 9-11
okSurfing[®] (Japanese) Downloading e-Books e-Books Viewer	9-12
orhythm Registering Birthday Checking Biorhythm Registering Friend's Birthday. Checking Friend's Biorhythm.	9-12 9-13 9-13 9-13
dgets (Japanese) Downloading Widgets Deleting Downloaded Widget Using Widget Display Packages Adding to Standby Display Adding from Widget List Wallpaper Widget S! Friend's Status Widget S! Quick News Widget Mini Player Widget Dual Clock Widget S! Information Channel Widget. S! Information Channel Widget Calendar Widget Alarm Widget Alarm Widget Memo Widgets Top 3 Widget Using Standby Widgets as Shortcuts	9-14 9-15 9-15 9-15 9-16 9-17 9-18 9-18 9-18 9-19 9-19 9-19 9-19

Near Chat (Japanese) 9-10



dvanced Settings9-20
S! Quick News
S! Information Channel 9-21
S! Friend's Status
Widgets

Entertainment Functions

Access the Internet to view or download content. Subscribe to content for automatic updates. Learn how to download and use content.

Note

These services require separate subscriptions:

- S! Ouick News
- S! Information Channel/Weather
- S! Friend's Status





S! Applications (Japanese)

Play downloaded or preinstalled SoftBank S! Appli games.

When S! Appli is active on full screen, press ••••• a to view icon for Battery level, etc.

 For detailed instructions, see S! Appli Help or information on Internet download site.

Downloading S! Appli

- **1** Tap Menu → S! Appli → S! Appli List → Download S! Appli
 - Follow onscreen instructions.

Activating S! Appli

- 1 Tap Menu → S! Appli → S! Appli List
- Select S! Appli item

Play Network connection type S! Appli

Network (Internet) access confirmation appears.
 Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming call while S! Appli is activated

 S! Appli will be paused and Incoming call window appears.

To check S! Appli Demand history

ullet Tap Menu ullet S! Appli ullet Demand history

Exiting S! Appli

- While S! Appli is activated
- 2 Exit

To pause S! Appli

●While S! Appli is active, ✓ → Pause

To resume paused S! Appli

ullet Tap Menu ullet S! Appli ullet Resume

To end paused S! Appli

ullet Tap Menu o S! Appli o Exit

Games

The following games are preinstalled on handset.

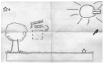
Note

 Some games require shaking handset. If shaken too hard, handset may impact a person or object, causing damage/injury. Do not shake handset too hard. Hold firmly in a safe place while playing games.

Crayon Physics

Trace pictures on the screen that become falling objects. Use those objects to guide the ball up to the star.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Crayon Physics
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions



Number Place World

Fill out 81 grids with numbers. Fill out all 9x9 grid with numbers one through nine. One through nine can be used only once in each column, row and box with 3x3 grid.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Number Place World
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions



Touch Golf Pangya

This is a golf game anyone can enjoy without being knowledgeable about golf.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Touch Golf Pangya
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions



Hidden Catch4

Clear three stages: 間違い探し Find the differences between two images; 変わる絵 Find changes that occur as time elapses; 隠し絵 Find hidden spirits.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Hidden Catch4
- Follow onscreen instructions



Dice

Shake handset to cast two dice in the window.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Dice
- Shake handset



Random Ball

Set a range of numbers and number of balls to use for playing bingo.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Random Ball
- **2** Range \rightarrow Set $Min(0 \sim)$ and $Max(\sim 50) \rightarrow$ Tap OK \rightarrow Balls \rightarrow Enter quantity \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Tap OK
- 3 Shake handset



S! Quick News (Japanese)

View Yahoo! Keitai content update information.

- Check for updates of items saved in S! Quick News (◆P.9-17).
- S! Quick News requires a separate subscription.

Opening List

1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Quick News



S! Quick News List

: Unread Special News
: Unread News Flash

🗦 : Unread General News 🐺 : Read Special News

🖃 : Read News Flash 🔯 : Read General news

Note

 Using S! Quick News incurs Packet Communication charges apply.

Viewing Update Information

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Quick News
- Select content
 - Select an entry
 - Tap List/Index to return to S! Quick News list/ Contents list.
 - To connect to Internet and check for update, select an item → Yes.
 - To view information on the previous page, tap Previous.
 - To view information on the next page, tap Next.
 - Tap Show keypad to show Keypad.

Registering S! Quick News List

Register up to one special and five general news/ newsflash in S! Quick News list.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Ouick News
- Register contents → Yes
- 3 Select content → Follow onscreen instructions

Refreshing Entries Manually

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Quick News
- 2 Tap Refresh → Select contents to refresh → Tap OK
 - Tap Cancel to cancel refresh in process.

Deleting Entries

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Quick News
- Tap Delete → Select contents to delete → Tap Delete → Yes

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.9-20

- Viewing Content Details
- Refreshing S! Quick News List
- Viewing S! Quick News from List

Free Content

Access free content in S! Contents Store.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Free contents
- 2 Tada-Melody (Ringtones)|
 Tada-Deco (Graphic Mail)|
 Tada-Komi (Comics)|Tada-Game|
 Tada-Utaban (Music Programs)
 → Follow onscreen instructions

S! Contents Store

Search and download digital content (e.g. music, games, comics) via this site. Browse a large variety of featured/free content and media charts/reviews.

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Contents Store
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions

S! Information Channel

S! Information Channel delivers subscribed content such as overnight news. Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

- This service is only available in Japan.
- S! Information Channel requires a separate subscription.

Service Registration

- Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Information Channell Weather → Register/Cancel
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions

New Received Information

S! Information Channel content is received automatically; notification appears in Standby.

- 1 Tap a notification
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions
 - Operations are same as Yahoo! Keitai.

Using Weather Indicator

Upon subscription to S! Information Channel, Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

: Clear (daytime)

: Clear (nighttime)

: Cloudy

🐃 : Rain

🚱 : Snow

🕏 : Thunderstorm

/ : Intermittent

Example: \bigcirc / \Longrightarrow Cloudy, Intermittent rain

•In addition to the above, other information such as rainfall probability or seasonal information appears.

Note

• Using S! Information Channel incurs Packet Communication charges.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Set Weather Indicator Update Notification (P.14-20)
- Set Weather Indicator Automatic Update (P.14-20)

S! Friend's Status

Check members' current mood or availability.

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate subscription.
- Available on S! Friend's Status-compatible models.



 Add Phone Book entries to Members List to make their status available. Status is updated automatically.

Note

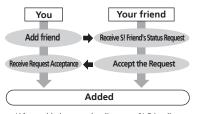
Confirm IP service setting (♠P.14-22) is set to
 On before using this service.

Saving Members

Add a member to S! Friend's Status members list to share information with other members.

• Add up to 30 members.

Registering Flow



- When added to member list, your S! Friend's Status (My Status) will be sent, and information will be shared with each other.
- Notification is sent to person added or removed from S! Friend's Status members list.

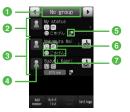
See S! Friend's Status Notification types below:

Туре	Description
S! Friend's Status Request	You are added to S! Friend's Status members list.
Request Acceptance	Your request for S! Friend's Status members list is accepted.
Request Rejection	Your S! Friend's Status members list request is rejected or no reply has been received within two hours.
Cancel Request	You are removed from S! Friend's Status members list.
Offline Notification	S! Friend's Status is not available due to network trouble.

Note

 When network connection status (◆P.9-21) is Offline, adding members to the list is not available. When adding members, make sure to set network connection status to Online.

Opening Member Status



Members List Window



Member Status Window

- 1 Group name of S! Friend's Status
- 2 Your information (My Status) (�P.9-9)
- 3 Member's information
- 4 Image saved in Account Details appears in My Status. Image, name, and phone number saved in Phone Book appears in Member Status.

- ⑤ S! Friend's Status widget setting status Appears when Widget disp. On is set to Yes.
- Answer status Call or message answer status
- 7 Status icon and status label indicates your/member's status.
- Network connection status indicates your/member's connection status
- Omment

Registering from Phone Book

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Friend's Status
 - When no member is saved, choose **Yes** and go to 3.
- 2 Tap Add member
- 3 Add members
 - To Use Phone Book

From phonebook \rightarrow Search and select entry (**②**P.2-18) \rightarrow Select phone number

To Enter Phone Number

New entry → Enter phone number → Tap OK

4 Send request confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- After request is accepted and Request Acceptance received, member is added.
- S! Friend's Status information changes to Waiting and status to Unknown.
- •If you do not wish to show your status upon initial registration by default, change My Status first.

Note

- When 30 members are saved, none can be added. Delete members to add new ones.
- If handset is incompatible, Request Rejection Notification appears.

Registering from Received Request

Add members via S! Friend's Status Request.

• When received, add sender confirmation appears.



S! Friend's Status Request Window

- 1 Tap notification list → Select S! Friend's Status Request
- 2 S! Friend's Status Request appears, choose *Yes*
 - Request Acceptance received and new member is added to the list.
 - Choose No to reject the request. Request Rejection is sent (member is not added).
 - To check later, select Check Later.
- Request Rejection is automatically sent:
- Not available to reply within two hours.
- 30 members are already saved.

Note

- For No, Request Rejection is sent. The person who sent Request cannot be added to members list for 24 hours.
- If Request Rejection is not received within 24 hours, Request is resent.

Changing My Status

Set S! Friend's Status information as follows.

My Status Details Window

1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Friend's Status → My status



My Status Details Window

- 1 Image Show images saved in Account Details.
- Snow images saved in Account Details.
 S! Friend's Status widget setting status Appears when Widget disp. On is set to Yes.
- 3 Network connection status (�P.9-21)
- ◆ Status icon and status label Change pictograms (status icon) and short sentence (status label). Change status icon and label in Status setting by tapping Edit (◆P.9-22).
- 6 Answer status Change Answer status of call or message.
- 6 Comment Edit Short message (up to 15 characters).

Changing My Status Information

- Open My Status Details window
 → Select item to change (except network connection status)
 → Change setting
 → Tap Update
 - Changed My Status is sent to members.

Set following items.

Item	S	ettings
Status setting	16 combinations labels	of status icons and
One time setting		
	All OK	Call: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK
	Mail only OK	Call: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK
	All NG	Call: Answer NG Mail: Check later
	User Setting	-*
Call	Answer OK, Urge	ency only, Answer NG
Mail	Reply OK, Check later	
Comment	Max. 15 characte	ers

^{*}Change answer settings in *One time setting* (♠P.9-22).

Deleting Member

- Tap Menu → Entertainment →
 S! Friend's Status → Select
 member to delete → Tap
 Unregister → Yes
- •The removed member cannot be added again to the list for 24 hours.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.9-21

- Toggling My Status in Widget Screen On/Off
- Adding S! Friend's Status Member to Widget
- Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification
- Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification
- Adding Members to Phone Book
- Editing Members in Phone Book
- Editing Group Names
- Setting My Image
- Setting S! Friend's Status Member Images

₹ Settings

Set IP Service Setting (
P.14-22)

Near Chat (Japanese)

- This application employs a function that enables supervising adults to restrict usage by children under 18 years old.
- For details on password restriction, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.
- Users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources, as Near Chat employs Bluetooth[®] technology. You can reject such requests.

About Near Chat

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible devices within ten meters.

- This application employs Bluetooth[®] technology.
 Therefore, connection fees do not apply.
- Near Chat S! Appli is required. This application is pre-installed in handset.

Note

- Near Chat range may vary depending upon ambient conditions.
- The pre-installed Near Chat S! Appli cannot be deleted.
- Near Chat might not connect, operate differently, or be unable to send and receive data due to the features and specifications of the other parties' handsets.

Using Near Chat

Setup

First, activate these settings.

- Bluetooth
- Bluetooth Visibility
- S! Appli request setting
- Activating Near Chat activates Bluetooth.
 Bluetooth remains active even after Near Chat ends.

Note

- When Bluetooth® is Off, you cannot use Near Chat S! Appli.
- When Bluetooth® is On and My phone's visibility in Bluetooth settings is Show my phone, handset is visible to other Bluetooth® devices. Connection requests from other devices may be received.
- When My phone's visibility is Hide my phone and S! Appli request is Off, Near Chat will not start from other device requests.

S! Appli Request

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth
- **2** Tap More → *Settings*
- (3) Under S! Appli request, On or Off

Sending Near Chat Request

1 Tap Menu → S! Appli → S! Appli List → ちかチャット → はい



- If Bluetooth On/Off is Off, choose Yes.
- 2 Send Near Chat request via S! Appli
- 3 To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (�P.9-3)

Receiving Near Chat Request

For details on Near Chat operations, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.

When Near Chat request appears, choose Yes



- 2 When a confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
- To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (�P.9-3)
- After 30 seconds of inactivity, notification appears.

BookSurfing® (Japanese)

Download and view e-books, comics, photobooks (CCF files) saved in Books. Enlarge/ reduce images, scroll pages, browse images with Vibration/Sound effects.

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. After changing phone models, move CCF files via Memory Card. Re-download Content Key to browse those files. Note that some contents may require re-downloading CCF files.

Downloading e-Books

- **1** Tap Menu → *S! Appli → S! Appli List → ブックサー*フィン
- ② 作品をさがす (Web から)
 → はい
 - · Follow onscreen instructions.

e-Books Viewer

- **1** Tap Menu → *S! Appli → S! Appli List → ブックサー*フィン
 - For operation after activation, see BookSurfing[®] help.

Biorhythm

People have rhythms of 23-day physical cycles, 28-day emotional cycles, and 33-day intellectual cycles. Register birthday for a graph of that person's monthly biorhythm. Graph shows peak and off days for the month.

 In Biorhythm window, tap What's biorhythm? for description.

Registering Birthday

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Biorhythm → Input birthday
- 2 Enter birthday
- Birthday Registration window appears only if birthday is unregistered. If birthday is registered, (Graph/Attention!) Biorhythm for current day or month appears.

Checking Biorhythm

Today

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Biorhythm
 - Tap My Birthday → Enter birthday to change My Birthday.



●Tap ◀ / ▶ to change biorhythm date.

Monthly View

- 1 Tap Menu → Entertainment → Biorhythm → Tap Monthly view → 4 / ▶
 - Tap My Birthday → Enter birth date.



Tap
 ✓ I to change biorhythm month.



• Tap Graph/Attention! to change view.

Registering Friend's Birthday

- Tap Menu → Entertainment → Biorhythm → Tap Friend's biorhythm
- 2 Enter birthday
- Birthday Registration window appears only if birthday is unregistered. If birthday is registered, (Graph/Attention!) biorhythm for current day or month appears.

Checking Friend's Biorhythm

- Tap Menu → Entertainment → Biorhythm → Tap Friend's biorhythm
 - Tap Friend's Birthday field → Enter birthday to add birthday.
- To change Friend's Biorhythm view, follow steps to change My Biorhythm view (♠P.9-12).
- Tap My biorhythm to return to your own.

Widgets (Japanese)

Tap widgets to access associated functions. Download widgets via Widget Store. These widgets are pre-installed:

Widget	Description
美女暦 (BIJO ごよみ)	Activate Bijo Goyomi
とくする クーポン	Download Coupons
ぐるなびウィ ジェット	Activate Gnavi widget
mixi	Open mixi login page
マイスペース @アーティスト と友達に♪	Activate MySpace widget
お父さん ウィジェット	Open Otousan widget. Animated Otousan appears in Standby
ソフトバン クモバイル グルメ	Search for restaurants
ウィジェット ストア	Download latest widget information
Analog Clock	Show Analog Clock
Digital Clock	Show Digital Clock
Dual Clock	Show two clocks as specified in world map. Tap Clock to set area (�P.9-18)
Calendar	Show Calendar/ choose view

Widget	Description
Tasks	Show all tasks
Alarm	Show Alarm settings
Memo (Yellow)	Open Yellow Memo
Memo (Blue)	Open Blue Memo
Memo (Red)	Open Red Memo
Countdown timer	Activate Countdown Timer
Light	Illuminate Backlight for 30 seconds
S! Information Channel	Access S! Information Channel
S! Friend's Status	Access S! Friend's Status
S! Quick News	Access S! Quick News
Тор3	Show three most frequently called/ messaged parties
Mini player	Use Music Player in Standby
Wallpaper	Open Data Folder to set Wallpaper
Menu list	Open Yahoo! Keitai Menu list information
My Softbank	Open My SoftBank information
Machi-Uta	Open Machi-Uta information
S-1 BATTLE	Open S-1 battle information
Content Value Package	Open Content Value Package information
Easy movie	Open Simple Select Video information
Easy music	Open Easy Music information

Note

• Separate subscription required to use S! Friend's Status/S! Quick News.

Downloading Widgets

Download up to 999 widgets.



Tap Menu → Widget



· Follow onscreen instructions.

2 Widget Store

- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Menu → *Widget* → *Widget list* → *Widget Store*.
- Manual installation may be necessary depending on widget downloaded.
 In Widget list, select widget → If confirmation appears, choose Yes.

Deleting Downloaded Widget

1 Tap Menu → Widget → Widget list → Tap Delete



- 2 Check widgets to delete → Tap Delete → Yes
- To delete all downloaded widgets, perform ① →
 Mark all → Tap Delete → Enter Phone Password
 → Tap OK → *Yes*.
- If widget is saved on Widget Bar, confirmation message appears after ②. Choose *Yes* to confirm.

Using Widget Display Packages

There are four Widget Display Packages: A, B, C and D. Assign widgets to each Package.

1 Tap A, B, C, or D





A Package

B Package

- Handset retains Package widget assignments even if Package content is changed or handset powers off.
- •Swipe left/right to toggle Packages.

Adding to Standby Display

Select widgets from Widget list or drag from Widget Bar to add them to Standby Display.

Add up to five widgets to each Package.

- Tap Digital Clock or Analog Clock widgets to show in Standby. These widgets have no other function.
- Each Package contains pre-assigned widgets.

Adding from Widget Bar

1 Tap Widget Bar tab



- Widget Bar Tab

2 Drag widget to Standby Display



- Standby widget may overlap.
- To move widget assignments in Standby, touch and hold widget; drag & drop to desired location.
- Change widget order in Widget Bar. Drag widgets to rearrange them.

Adding from Widget List

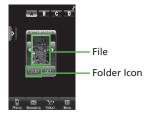
- 1 Tap Menu → Widget → Widget list
- Tap Preset widget as required → Tap Add to standby



3 Select widget to add

- If saved to Standby Display, Υ appears next to widget in Widget list.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Menu → Widget
 → Widget list → Tap Move → Check widgets
 to remove from Standby → Tap Move → Yes to
 remove widgets from Standby.
- When Memory Card is inserted and *Preset widget* is not selected, tap ** to toggle handset/ Memory Card.
- When adding widget from Memory Card to Standby Display, save to handset first confirmation appears. Choose Yes to confirm.
- Alternatively, tap Widget Bar tab → Widget list button.

Wallpaper Widget



- 🚹 Folder
- 2 Select Preset picture/Pictures
- Tap / to select a file
- 4 Set

S! Friend's Status Widget

Check or operate S! Friend's Status in Standby. Add up to six people including yourself.



Switching View Mode Icon

My Status Icon

- S! Friend's Member Icons

Member Standby Widget



Member List Standby Widget

- 1 Tap Widget Bar tab
- 2 Drag S! Friend's Status widget to Standby Display
 - S! Friend's Status widget is shown in Standby.
- 3 Tap S! Friend's Status icon

• S! Friend's Status member list appears.

Adding My Status Widget Icon



- Tap My Status disp. On
 - To hide your status, tap My Status disp. Off.

Registering Member Widget Icon

- 1 Tap 2 2 2 2 2
- 2 Tap Add → Tap a field to register a member
- 3 Add a member
 - From Phone Book

 From phonebook → Search and select
 entry (�P.2-18) → Select the number
 - From S! Friend's Status Member List

 S! Friend's Status → Choose an S!

 Friend's Status member

S! Quick News Widget

Default: S! Quick News widget appears in Standby.



- 1 Tap News Ticker
 - Contents list appears.
- Check news (♦P.9-5)

Mini Player Widget



- 1 Cue/Previous track Tap within three seconds after playback begins to go to previous track, tap three seconds after playback commences to cue the start of current track.
- 2 Title (or file name is shown if there is no title), Artist name/Launch Media Player.
- 3 Play/Pause
- 4 Next track
- 5 Volume level
- Press 🖺 / 🖥 to adjust the volume.
- In Standby, press \nearrow \rightarrow Yes to stop playback.
- Playback with Mini player widget starts from first song in *All music* or last played point.

Dual Clock Widget



To change the region for Clock, tap Clock →
 Tap a city to register → Set as 1st clock/Set
 as 2nd clock → Tap OK.

S! Information Channel Widget



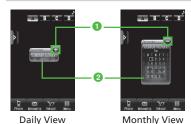
- Tap Tor S! Information Channel/Weather menu.
- For details on subscribing to S! Information Channel, see "Service Registration" (◆P.9-6).

Weather Widget



- Tap Weather Indicator for weather information.
 Tap for S! Information Channel/Weather menu.
- See "Using Weather Indicator" (�P.9-7).

Calendar Widget



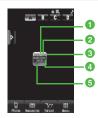
- 2 Calendar Tap this to launch Calendar.

Alarm Widget



- Time set for Alarm appears. If more than one Alarm is set, the Alarm set closest to current time appears.
- Tap widget to activate Alarm (◆P.10-3).

Tasks Widget



- Priority
- 2 Status

O:Complete ⊘:Incomplete ×:Expired

- Alarm set
- 4 Due date
- Title
- If multiple tasks are set, the Alarm set closest to current time appears.

Memo Widgets



- Show yellow/blue/red memos.
- Tap widgets to edit contents.

Top 3 Widget



Show three most frequently called/messaged contacts.

Placing a Video Call

- 1 Tap 🛅 tab
- 2 Tap name
 - Tap name to dial.

Creating/Sending Mail

- 🚺 Tap 🔤 tab
- 2 Tap name
 - Tap name to open Message creation window.

Using Standby Widgets as Shortcuts

Tap these widgets to launch corresponding functions:

- ●美女暦 (BIJO ごよみ) *
- ●とくするクーポン *
- ●ぐるなびウィジェット*
- ●mixi*
- ●マイスペース@アーティストと友達に♪*
- ●お父さんウィジェット*
- ●ソフトバンクモバイルグルメ *
- ●ウィジェットストア *
- Task
- Alarm
- Countdown timer
- Light
- Menu list*
- Mv Softbank*
- Machi-Uta*
- ●S-1 BATTLE*
- Contents Value Package*
- Easy movie*
- Easy music*
- * This widget may access the Internet incurring communications charges.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.9-23

- Opening Downloaded Widget Detail
- Sending Downloaded Widgets
- Rearranging Downloaded Widgets

₹ Settings

- Set Downloaded Widget Automatic Update (P.14-20)
- Set Roaming Automatic Connection (P.14-20)
- Show/Hide Confirmation When Using Overseas (P.14-20)
- Accept/Reject Cookies (P.14-20)
- Deleting Cookies (TP.14-20)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

S! Quick News

Viewing Content Details

In S! Quick News list, tap Details \rightarrow Select content

Refreshing S! Quick News List

In S! Quick News list, select content → Tap Refresh

• Tap Cancel to cancel.

Viewing S! Quick News from List

In S! Quick News list, select content → *Website* → *Yes*

● Tap List or \(\subseteq \text{LEAR}\) to view S! Quick News List.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Quick News* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *Auto refresh*

To Refresh Newsflash Automatically Flash news → Select an item

To Refresh General News Automatically General → On or Off

To Refresh Special AutomaticallySpecial → On or Off

Auto refresh is executed based on the set time.
 To view next refresh time, in S! Quick News list, tap Details → Select content.

- Set General to On to refresh automatically once a
- Setting Special to On may incur high Packet Communication charges.
- Set **Special** to **On** to refresh automatically once every four hours.
- Special and Flash news auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM. If General is set, news is refreshed automatically during that period.
- Auto refresh is not performed while roaming. Instead, refresh manually (\$P.9-5).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh fails, update news manually (◆P.9-5).
- · Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh

Deleting S! Quick News List

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Ouick News* → Tap Settings → Delete S! Quick News List

 \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

S! Information Channel

Viewing after Indicator Disappears

Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → What's New?

Viewing Information Previously Received

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Information* Channel/Weather → History → Select an item

Receiving Disrupted Information Again

Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Information Channel/Weather → Get Latest Contents → Yes

Displaying Weather Indicator

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information* Channel/Weather → Weather Indicator → Weather

Updating Weather Indicator Manually

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Information* Channel/Weather → Weather Indicator → Manual update → Yes

S! Friend's Status

Setting S! Friend's Status Connection

Open My Status details → Online/Offline in Network connection status field → Yes

• Set to *Online* to edit or update My Status.

Toggling My Status in Widget Screen On/Off

Open My Status details → Tap Widget disp. On or Widget disp. Off \rightarrow Yes or No

 Choose Widget disp. On/Widget disp. Off → Yes to show or hide My status in Widget screen respectively.

Adding S! Friend's Status Member to Widget

Tap Menu → Entertainment → S! Friend's Status → select a member to set → Tap Widget disp. On \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow Select save location

• If widget is full, add members by overwriting the existing one.

Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's* Status → Tap Notif. list → Select a notification list to view

- Tap each notification to check notification details.
- Request notification can also be selected (♠P.9-9).

Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's* Status → Tap Notif. list → Tap Delete → Check notification to delete → Tap Delete

Placing Voice/Video Call & Messaging

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow select a member

To Place a Call

Tap Solution of Answer status → Voice Call/Video Call

To Send a Message

Tap \square of Answer status \rightarrow S! Mail or SMS \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-5 S! Mail \bigcirc P.4-7 SMS \bigcirc)

 Alternatively, in S! Friend's Status members list, tap to place Voice Call/Video Call or message.

Adding Members to Phone Book

Tap Menu \rightarrow Entertainment \rightarrow S! Friend's Status \rightarrow Select a member \rightarrow Tap Add to phonebook \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-23 Entering and Saving Phone Number)

Editing Members in Phone Book

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Select a member \rightarrow Tap Edit phonebook \rightarrow Edit entry (\bigcirc P.2-22)

Setting Actions When Saving

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Friend's Status* → Tap Settings → *Request reply* → Select an item

 If *Do not answer* is selected, Request Rejection is always returned.

Setting Answer Status

Tap Menu \rightarrow Entertainment \rightarrow S! Friend's Status \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow One time setting \rightarrow User Settings \rightarrow Select answer status \rightarrow Select answer status icon \rightarrow Tap Save

Changing Status Icons or Status Labels

Tap Menu \rightarrow Entertainment \rightarrow S! Friend's Status \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow Status setting \rightarrow Select an icon to change \rightarrow Status icon \rightarrow Select an icon \rightarrow Status label \rightarrow Enter text \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Tap Save

- Selectable icons in *Status icon* is same as those for pictograms.
- Enter up to four characters in Status label.

Setting List View

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *List display setting* \rightarrow Select an item

Updating Lists

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Tap Settings \rightarrow *Update list*

 Information in S! Friend's Status is basically updated automatically.

Editing Group Names

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow \blacktriangleleft / \blacktriangleright to switch to group to edit name \rightarrow Tap Group name \rightarrow Enter group name

Changing Groups

Tap Menu \rightarrow Entertainment \rightarrow S! Friend's Status \rightarrow Select a member to change group \rightarrow Tap Group field \rightarrow Select a group to change

Removing a Member

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Select a member to remove \rightarrow Tap Unregister \rightarrow *Yes*

- The removed member cannot be added to the list again for 24 hours.
- If Cancel Notification is not received by the removed member within 24 hours, the S! Friend's Status Request is sent from the member.

Editing Names

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Select a member to edit name

To Add Unregistered Members

Tap Add to phonebook → (♠P.2-23 Entering and Saving Phone Number)

To Edit Registered Members

Tap Edit phonebook → Edit Phone Book entries (�P.2-22)

•The name in Phone Book is also changed.

Setting My Image

Open My Status Details Window → Tap Edit My details → 🖪

To Set from Saved Still Image

Pictures → Select a file

•With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from Digital Camera folder.

To Set by Capturing Still Image

Take photo → Capture still image (�P.7-6 Normal 2 to 3)

To Cancel Set Image Off

• The image in Account Details is also changed.

Setting S! Friend's Status Member Images

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Friend's Status* \rightarrow Select a member to change the incoming image \rightarrow Tap Edit Phone Book \rightarrow

To Set from Saved Still Image

Pictures → Select a file

 With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from Digital Camera folder.

To Set by Capturing Still Image

Take photo → Capture still image (�P.7-6 Normal 2 to 3)

To Cancel Incoming Image Set Off

- To add unsaved members to Phone Book, tap Add phonebook (♠P.2-23 Entering and Saving Phone Number). To edit members saved in Phone Book, tap Edit phonebook → Edit Phone Book entries (♠P.2-22).
- The incoming image in Phone Book is also changed.

Widgets

Opening Downloaded Widget Detail

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Widget* \rightarrow *Widget list* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Details* \rightarrow Select widget

Alternatively, tap Menu → Widget → Widget list
 → Select widget → Details.

Sending Downloaded Widgets

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Widget* \rightarrow *Widget list* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send*

To Send via Message

Via message → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

 $Via\ Bluetooth$ → (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Infrared

 $Via\ Infrared$ → (\bigcirc P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → (�P.13-8)

Rearranging Downloaded Widgets

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Widget* \rightarrow *Widget list* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Change order* \rightarrow Touch and hold widget to move \rightarrow Drop widget \rightarrow Tap OK

Updating View

Tap Widget Bar tab \rightarrow Widget Menu \rightarrow Update view

Logging in to Yahoo! JAPAN

Tap Widget Bar tab → Widget Menu → Yahoo!JAPAN log in

Yahoo!JAPAN log in becomes Yahoo!JAPAN log out.

Installing Widgets Manually

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Widget* \rightarrow *Widget list* \rightarrow Select widget to install \rightarrow *Yes*

When installing new version of installed widget,
 Upgrade confirmation appears. Choose Yes to upgrade.

Removing S! Friend's Status Member

Changing S! Friend's Status Icon

△ 8 8 8 6 A → Tap More → Change image → Choose an S! Friend's Status member → Select an icon

Calling/Messaging S! Friend's Status Member

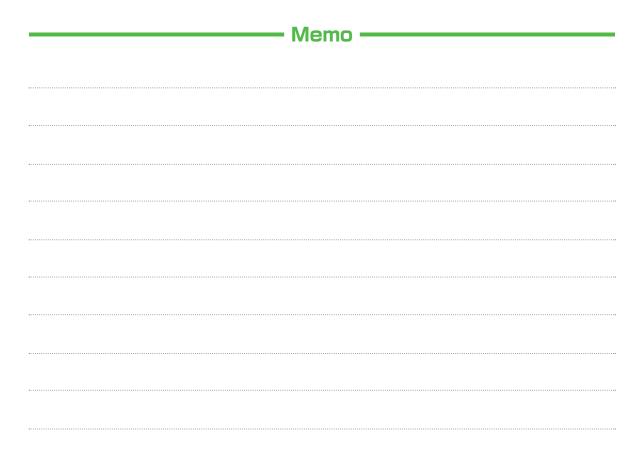
To Place a Voice Call

Voice call

To Place a Video Call
Video call

To Message

S! Mail or SMS → (♠P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤, P.4-7 SMS ⑥)



Handy Extras

Alarms. 10 Setting/Resetting Alarms. 10 Editing Alarm. 10 Calendar 10 Viewing Calendar 10 Opening Calendar 10 Viewing Schedule 10 Viewing Schedule 10 Viewing Schedule 10 Tasks 10 Saving Tasks 11 Viewing Tasks 10 Viewing Tasks 10 Viewing Tasks 11 Viewing Tasks 1)-3)-4)-4)-5
Editing Alarm 10 Calendar 10 Viewing Calendar 10 Opening Calendar 10 Saving Schedule 11 Viewing Schedule 10 Tasks 10 Saving Tasks 10 Viewing Tasks 11 Marking a Task as Completed 10 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10)-3)-4)-4)-5)-5
Editing Alarm 10 Calendar 10 Viewing Calendar 10 Opening Calendar 10 Saving Schedule 11 Viewing Schedule 10 Tasks 10 Saving Tasks 10 Viewing Tasks 11 Marking a Task as Completed 10 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10)-3)-4)-4)-5)-5
Viewing Calendar)-4)-5)-5
Viewing Calendar)-4)-5)-5
Saving Schedule 11 Viewing Schedule 10 Tasks 10 Saving Tasks 10 Viewing Tasks 10 Warking a Task as Completed 10 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10)-5
Viewing Schedule 10 Tasks 10 Saving Tasks 11 Viewing Tasks 10 Marking a Task as Completed 10 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10)-5 \
Tasks 10 Saving Tasks 10 Viewing Tasks 11 Marking a Task as Completed 10 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10	
Saving Tasks. 10 Viewing Tasks 11 Marking a Task as Completed 10 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 11 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10	
Viewing Tasks 11 Marking a Task as Completed 16 Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 11 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 11 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10)-5
Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 10 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10)-5 1
Osaifu-Keitai® 10 Activating Lifestyle-Appli 10 Downloading Lifestyle-Appli 10 Using Osaifu-Keitai® 10))-6
Activating Lifestyle-Appli	
Downloading Lifestyle-Appli)-6
Using Osaifu-Keitai®)-6
1C Cand Lank 10)-7
IC Card Lock)-7
Message Remote Lock)-7
Call Remote Lock)-7
S! GPS Navi	
Using S! GPS Navi	
Checking Your Current Position 10)-9
Using Location Navi	
Expense Manager 10)-9
Activate Expense Manager)-9
Save Expense Information	1.0
Viewing Expense Information 10-	
World Clock	10
Viewing World Clock	10
Selecting Areas	10

Stopwatch	10-10
Countdown Timer	10-10
Good Night Timer	10-11
Calculator	
Converter	
Converting Currencies	10-12
Notepad	
Adding Notepad	10-13
Voice Recorder	10-13
Voice Recorder Window	10-13
Recording Sound	10-13
Barcode Reader	
Scan Barcodes/QR Code	10-14
Using Barcode Files	10-15
Creating QR Code	10-15
Checking Scanned Barcode	
File Viewer.	10-16
Using File Viewer	
Dictionary	10-17
Dummy Call	10-17
Setting Dummy Call	10-17
Activating Dummy Call	10-18



dvanced Settings 1	0-18
Alarm	10-18
Calendar	10-18
Tasks	10-21
Osaifu-Keitai [®]	10-22
S! GPS Navi	
Expense Manager	10-23
World Clock	
Stopwatch	
Countdown Timer	
Good Night Timer	
Calculator	
Currency/Unit Conversion	
Notepad	
Voice Recorder	
Barcode Reader	
File Viewer	
Dictionary	

Useful Handset Applications

Handset includes helpful lifestyle tools including Alarm/Calendar and Convenient tools including Calculator/Barcode Reader.

Alarm



S! GPS Navi

Set Alarms (P.10-3).

View map and

information of

surroundinas

Calendar



See calendar and save schedule entries (P.10-4).

Expense Manager

Good Night Timer



Create an account book (P.10-9).

Disable sound and

time periods

(P.10-11).

Vibration for specified

(P.10-8). **Countdown Timer**



Set Alarm to sound after specified length of time (P.10-10).

Notepad



Create/view text memos (**♦**P.10-13).

Voice Recorder



Record/playback voice memos, etc. (**♦**P.10-13).

Dictionary Dummy Call



Find English expressions for Japanese words or vice versa (**♦**P.10-28).

Tasks



Create/view to-do lists (P.10-5).

World Clock



See current time in major world cities (♠P.10-10).

Calculator



Use handset as a calculator (P.10-11).

Barcode Reader



Scan barcodes or OR Codes; create QR Codes on handset (P.10-14).

Osaifu-Keitai®



Shop with e-money (P.10-6).

Stopwatch



You can use stopwatch (P.10-10).

Converter



Convert currencies or units of measure (P.10-12).

File Viewer



View documents (P.10-16).



Fake calls to handset (**ᢒ**P.10-17).

Alarms

Save up to five Alarms. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel Alarm settings. Set Alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

Setting/Resetting Alarms

Example: Setting Alarm time

• For other items, see "Editing Alarm" (�P.10-3).

Setting

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Alarm*
- 2 Tap Time field to set → Enter
- 3 Tap Save
 - Set or edit Alarm and tap Save, Alarm is set to On automatically.
- At Alarm time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not Off.
 When Snooze is Off, tap OK to stop Alarm and Vibration

- If calling, dialing (Connecting... appears), or dialing (Dialling... appears) at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator appears. If Call connect tone in System sounds is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Tap OK to clear indicator, when Snooze is Off.
- •When Snooze is set to something other than Off, Alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until Snooze is canceled. When you tap Snooze while Alarm sounds, Alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. Tap End → End to stop Alarm and to clear indicator.
- •When Alarm is set, ... appears in Standby.
- If multiple Alarms are set for the same time, the first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks Alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (*Tools*), Alarm sounds first.
- When Manner mode is active, setting in *Manner mode setting* (◆P.10-20) applies.
- •If Camera or Voice Recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

Resetting Alarm

1 Tap Menu → Tools → Alarm → Tap Reset → Check an Alarm → Tap Reset → Yes

Editing Alarm

Tap Menu → Tools → Alarm → Tap Time field → Enter Alarm time

To Edit Alarm Name

Tap Alarm name field \rightarrow Enter Alarm name \rightarrow Tap Save

To Set Alarm to Repeat

In Repeat, tap a day to activate the Alarm

→ Tap Save

- •If you set Alarm only for a specific day, Alarm will activate only once.
- If you set Alarm for every day, Alarm will activate daily.
- To Activate/Cancel Alarm for Holidays
 Under Except holidays, On or Off →
 Tap Save
- To Set Alarm Sound or Video

Alert tone/video → Select a file to save → Select file → Tap Save

- Tap b to play file.
- To Adjust Alarm Volume
 In Volume field, adjust volume → Tap
 Save
- To Set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save

Tap to view a pattern.

To Set Snooze

 $Snooze \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Tap Save$

- When Snooze is set to something other than Off, Alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until Snooze is canceled. When you tap Snooze while Alarm sounds. Alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. When you tap $End \rightarrow End$, the Alarm stops and the indicator disappears.
- For Other, enter duration.

To Set Snooze Repeat Time(s)

Snooze repeat times → Select an item → Tap Save

To Set Alarm Duration Time *Duration* → Select an item → Tap Save • For Other, enter duration.

•If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.

Calendar

To view Calendar, add schedule in Calendar. Select from three view modes

Add *Title*, *Start date* or other information. Save up to 500 events including Tasks.

Viewing Calendar

Select from three view modes; Monthly view, Weekly view and Daily view.

- Tap Switch view to change view mode.
- If you select a date with Calendar entries, the entries appear.

Date in orange rectangle*: Highlighted position Background with orange*: Today

Blue Character: Saturday

Red Character: Holiday/Sunday (orange)*: Schedule registered

* When Color theme is red, color will be red.







Monthly View

Daily View

- To change Monthly/Weekly/Daily view window for previous/next month, tap 4 / or scroll Year/ Month/Day field.
- If you select a date with Calendar entries or Alarms set, the titles of Calendar entries, icons and other items appear.
 - : Schedule (No category)
 - a : Schedule (Appointment)
 - *: Schedule (Meeting)
 - : Schedule (Business)
- (Personal)
- : Schedule (Holiday)
- : Schedule (Anniversary)
- : Schedule (Birthday)
- : Schedule (Phone call)
- : Schedule (Date)
- ♠: Schedule (Travel) X: Schedule (Shopping)
- : Schedule (Miscellaneous)
- .: Alarm set
- 📑 : Repetition set

Opening Calendar

Saving Schedule

Save up to 500 events including Tasks.

Example: Saving title, start date & time, end date & time.

- For other items, see "Saving to Schedule" (P.10-18).
- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar*
- 2 Tap Add new
- 3 Enter title
- 4 Start date → Enter start date → Start time → Enter start time
- **5** End date → Enter end date → End time → Enter end time
- 6 Tap OK → Tap Save
- •In Calendar, select target date before 2 to enter the date in Start date or End date field.

Viewing Schedule

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools → Calendar*
- 2 Select the day to view
- Select a schedule
- To view the registered number of Calendar and Task in Calendar, tap More → Memory status.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-18

- Saving to Schedule
- Editing Schedule
- Opening a Specific Date
- Switching View Mode
- Viewing All Events
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Deleting Added Holiday
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Saving Schedule as vFile
- Printing Schedule via Bluetooth[®]

Tasks

Save up to 500 Tasks and Schedule entries; manage with list.

Saving Tasks

Example: Saving title, due date & time

- For other items, see "Saving Task" (�P.10-21).
- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks*
- Tap Add new
- 3 Enter a title
- 4 Due date → Enter date → Due time → Enter time → Tap OK
- 5 Tap Save

Viewing Tasks

1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks*

● In Tasks, tap tab to toggle ☐ (All tasks), ☐ (Completed tasks), ☐ (Uncompleted tasks), and ☐ (Expired tasks).

Marking a Task as Completed

- 2 Tap 💿 to complete



● Tap o to toggle (Completed tasks) and (Uncompleted tasks), (Completed tasks) and (Expired tasks) if expired.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.10-21

- Saving Task
- Sending Tasks as vFile
- Deleting Tasks
- Searching Tasks
- Viewing Secret Tasks
- Viewing Missed Alarm Event
- Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®
- Viewing Task Item Status
- Editing Tasks
- Saving Tasks as vFile

Osaifu-Keitai®

Place handset on compatible reader/writer to pay for goods and transport with e-money.

 Handset is embedded with an IC card for use with Osaifu-Keitai[®] that stores various service and usage information.

Activating Lifestyle-Appli

To use e-money, download a Lifestyle-Appli compatible with Osaifu-Keitai® service, and set up an account.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools → Osaifu-Keitai*
- 2 Lifestyle-Appli
- Select Lifestyle-Appli
 - Follow onscreen instructions

Note

- Procedures for deleting data in IC Card vary depending on Lifestyle-Appli used. For details, contact Osaifu-Keitai® service provider.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for accidental loss/alteration of any data on IC Card from malfunction or repairs.
- If handset is lost or stolen, IC Card may be used by others. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for charges incurred by another party.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Osaifu-Keitai*
- 2 Lifestyle-Appli
- 3 Download Lifestyle-Appli
- 4 Select Lifestyle-Appli
 - Lifestyle-Appli is saved in Lifestyle-Appli folder under Data Folder.

Note

- Downloading and using Lifestyle-Appli may incur high Packet Communication charges.
- Write down service passwords/contact details for customer service, etc.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Use Osaifu-Keitai® without activating Lifestyle-Appli.

- Place back of handset on reader/writer
 - Place handset parallel to reader/writer. If it does not scan, try moving handset around.
 - Confirm successful scan completion on reader/writer display.
 - Use Osaifu-Keitai[®] during a call or transmission; transaction may require more time than usual.

Note

- Placing objects (e.g., metal jewelry) between handset and reader/writer may inhibit scanning.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is available even when handset is off, but Lifestyle-Appli is not activated. However, if battery is left uncharged after out of battery alarm sounds, Osaifu-Keitai® may not be usable. Charge battery before usage.
- When handset is held up to reader/writer, handset may show a message or vibrate depending on service used. S! Appli, Messaging or Internet may also activate automatically. This behavior can be disabled via settings (P.10-22).

IC Card Lock

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Osaifu-Keitai → IC card settings → Under IC card lock, On → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes
 - In Standby, (appears.
 - Tap *Off* under *IC Card Lock* to unlock.

Message Remote Lock

Registering Message Remote Lock

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Osaifu-Keitai → IC card settings → Remote lock
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Under *Message*, *On*
- 3 Remote lock password → Set Password
- 4 Lock notice → To senderl Specific address/Not send notice
 - If you select Specific address, set address:
 - From phonebook → Search and select an entry (�P.2-18) → Select mail address
 - *Direct input* → Enter mail address

Using Message Remote Lock

- 1 Send message with only Remote lock password in Subject field
 - Unavailable if handset cannot receive messages.
 - After handset receives message, IC Card is unlocked and message is sent to specified address.

Call Remote Lock

Registering Call Remote Lock

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Osaifu-Keitai → IC card settings → Remote lock
- Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Under Call, On
- Remote lock number1/Remote lock number2
 - To Register from Phone Book

 From phonebook → Search and select entry
 - To Enter Phone Number

 Direct input → Enter phone number
 - To Register Public Phone Public phone
- 4 Missed call count → Enter missed call count

Using Call Remote Lock

- 1 Place a call from one of the specified numbers with Send Caller ID
- 2 Hang up after receiving call
- 3 Repeat 1-2, within three minutes, until specified number of incoming calls is reached
 - After specified number of incoming calls, IC Card Lock is set and a message informs you IC Card Lock is activated.

Note

- When setting IC Card Lock, call handset from the same specified phone number.
 Incoming calls from different phone numbers cannot be counted.
- Calls may not be counted when Call Forwarding is active.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-22

- Viewing IC Card Details
- Viewing Balance Info
- Deleting from Balance Info List
- Restricting Functions from Activating Automatically
- Restoring to Default Settings

₹ Settings

Set Security to Lifestyle-Appli (
P.14-21)

S! GPS Navi

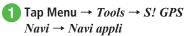
S! GPS Navi provides location information by communicating with base stations and by GPS satellite.

Note

- Location information may not be retrievable or may be inaccurate depending on location or signal conditions.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any trouble caused by information provided.
- S! GPS Navi incurs Packet Communication charges. For more information, visit SoftBank Mobile Website (http://www. softbank.jp).

Using S! GPS Navi

Activate Navi appli to check your surroundings and plan the shortest route to your destination.



- If confirmation appears, choose Yes.
- Tap Never show this to disable confirmation message.
- Navi appli activates after location information is retrieved.

Checking Your Current Position

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow S! GPS Navi \rightarrow Current location
 - If confirmation appears, choose Yes.
 - Tap Never show this to disable confirmation message.
 - Handset connects to Network and web page appears for map.

There are three levels of accuracy for location information.

- ●Level 3 (♣♦♦): Fairly accurate
- ●Level 2 (♣♦): Relatively accurate
- Level 1 (>>): Accurate location information could not be retrieved

If Positioning Accuracy Level is 1 or 2, confirmation appears. Tap *Re-positioning/Skip*.

Using Location Navi

Search for current location of saved users or for the approximate location of a lost handset. Search can also be performed with a computer.

For details, see SoftBank Mobile Website (http://www.softbank.jp).

- * A separate subscription is required for this service.
- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow S! GPS Navi \rightarrow Location Navi
- Handset connects to Internet.
- Follow onscreen instructions

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-22

- Sending Current Location via Message
- Saving My Location
- Deleting Bookmarked Location

3 Settings

- Register URL to View Map (@P.14-21)
- Hide Confirmation When Sending Location Information (P.14-21)
- Hide Information When Providing Location Information Automatically (P.14-21)

Expense Manager

Save expense information to calendar and create a simple account book for each month.

Activate Expense Manager

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Expense manager
- ●Tap ◀ / ▶ to view previous or next month.

Save Expense Information

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Expense manager
- 2 Tap Add new → Tap Enter expense field → Enter amount
 - Tap 📓 to enter calculation result.
- 3 Tap expense category → Select category
- 4 Tap Input details field → Enter details → Tap Save

Viewing Expense Information

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Expense manager
 - To View Total Expenses for a Day
 Select day to view expense → See Daily
 total
 - To View Total Expenses for a Month
 Select month to view expense → See
 Monthly total
 - To View Breakdown of Expenses for a Month

Select month to view expense → Tap Monthly expense → See numbers in list

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-23

Deleting an Expense Record

World Clock

See current time in world's major cities.

Viewing World Clock

1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow World clock

Selecting Areas

Save second time zone to show time in World clock. Save up to 20 areas.

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow World clock
- 2 Tap Add new → Scroll map and tap a city to register
 - To set/cancel summer time setting, tap or
- Tap Add new

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P. 10-24

Deleting World Clock

Stopwatch

Use handset as a stopwatch. Save up to ten lap times and total time.

- 2 Start
- 3 Stop
- While Stopwatch is running, tap *Lap* to mark a lap.
- Tap Restart to start Stopwatch again.
- Tap Reset to clear all times.

Countdown Timer

Count up to 60 minutes.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Countdown timer*
- Tap Edit → Enter count time
- 3 Start
- Tap *Restart* to restart countdown.
- Tap Reset to reset Countdown timer.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P. 10-24

Changing Alarm

Good Night Timer

Disable Alarm/Vibration/Light for a specific period of time.

- When Good night timer is On, Alarm/Vibration/ Light is set to Off, and volume level is set to 0 for functions that use sound.
- Even when Good night timer is On, other functions such as Voice Call etc. are available.
- Tap Menu → Tools → Good night timer
- Tap Time field of Timer
- 3 Tap Start time field → Enter start time
 - Check Activate now to start timer after Good night timer is set.
- 4 Tap End time field → Enter end time → Tap OK
- 5 In Repeat field, select day to activate Good night timer
 - To set Alarm once only, do not set day.
 - If Activate now is selected in 3, setting in Repeat will be canceled.

- 6 Alarm activation → On to activate Alarm with Alarm tone
- 7 Tap Save
 - Good night timer will be On automatically.

Note

 Deactivate other functions before Good night timer activates. If any other function is activated, Good night timer cannot be activated.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P. 10-24

Resetting Good Night Timer

Calculator

Perform four arithmetic operations up to 15 digits.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Calculator
- 2 Enter numbers and operators
- \bullet To move cursor, tap area to place cursor.
- To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression, place cursor after symbol → tap
- To erase mathematical expression and result all at once, tap
- Tap to input complex expressions like pi, trigonometric functions, or roots. To return to Number input window, tap ■2.

Converter

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Converting Currencies

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Converter → Currency
- 2 Tap Original currency field → Select currency



- 3 Tap Original currency value field → Enter value
 - Tap 📓 to enter calculation result.



- 4 See result in Converted currency value field
 - Tap Reset to reset convert.

Converting Units

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Converter → Length, Weight, Volume, Area, or Temperature
- 2 Tap Original unit field

 → Select unit
- 3 Tap Original unit value field
 - → Enter value
 - Tap 🖩 to enter calculation result.
- See result in Converted value field
 - Tap Reset to reset convert.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-24

- Viewing Exchange Rate
- Adding Currency Unit
- Deleting Added Currency Unit

Notepad

Add up to 100 memos. Add memos even while placing calls (P.3-24).

Adding Notepad

- Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* \rightarrow Notepad
- Tap Add new → Enter text
- Select category field → Select category
- Tap Save

Viewing Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Notepad* \rightarrow Select the target

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.10-25

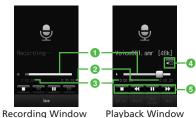
- Sending Notepad
- Deleting Notepad
- Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Voice Recorder

Record up to 60 minutes: activate from Tools. or via Menu in Data Folder, or during a call. Message creation window.

Voice Recorder Window

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice Recorder.



- Status bar
- Recordable time (while recording)/ Playback time (while playing)
- 3 Elapsed time
- 4 Adjust volume
- 6 Playback navigation

Recording Sound

Recorded sound is saved to Ring songs • tones in Data Folder.

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* → Voice recorder
- Tap 🚺
- Tap or Save
 - When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
 - Tap 11 to pause recording. Tap 10 to resume recording.
- To quickly confirm recorded content, tap . Tap again to pause playback.
- To start the next recording, tap Record.

10

Playing Sound

Play sound file saved in Data Folder.

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* → Voice recorder
- Tap Data Folder
- 3 Select a sound file
- Tap a to adjust playback volume level.
- ●Tap / or scroll Status bar to rewind/fast forward.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-25

- Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.
- Moving Recorded Sound File
- Copying Recorded Sound File
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Deleting Recorded Sound File
- Editing Recorded Sound File Name
- Protecting Recorded Sound File
- Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Barcode Reader

Use Camera to scan printed barcodes, OR Code or barcode images acquired from websites, etc.

Scan Barcodes/QR Code

Barcode reader automatically identifies and scans Barcodes (JAN code) and OR Codes. Use scan results for handset operations such as calling.



QR code

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* → Bar code reader → Scan barcode
- 2 Use Display to frame barcode \rightarrow Scan or \bigcirc
 - Camera focuses and scans barcode automatically.
- ●Alternatively, tap Menu → Camera → Bar code reader to start scanning.
- Some barcodes may be invalid.

- Scan may fail if barcode is not clear.
- •Indoors, scan may fail if handset shadows barcode.
- Scan may fail when capturing multiple barcodes.
- JAN codes are one-dimensional codes made up of combinations of vertical bars of varying widths and spaces. Handset is not compatible with other 1D codes (e.g., ITF code, Code39, or Codebar/NW-7).
- OR Code is two-dimensional code with information in matrix
- Hold handset approximately ten cm away from barcode. If it does not scan, move handset slowly to adjust the distance to fix focus.
- Tap Macro Off/Macro On to set/cancel macro.
- To adjust brightness, tap Exposure.
- To save the scanned result, tap Save. To check the saved barcode, tap Result.
- To scan multiple barcodes continuously, tap Continue after activating Barcode reader then scan. After a scan is complete, choose Yes to scan the next barcode
- Split barcodes cannot be opened or saved unless all split barcodes are scanned.
- You can use any phone numbers, mail addresses, or other items for Phone Book entries if they are contained in the scanned data (SP.10-26). For usable information, the background color of the text turns light blue; however, if the text contains any character that is not allowed to use that information, the background area for the following characters does not turn light blue.
- Use OR Codes for text only. Handset cannot scan OR Codes created from media files

Using Barcode Files

Use a barcode file saved in Data Folder.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Bar code reader → Open barcode
 - With Memory Card inserted, select a file from Pictures or Digital Camera folder.
- 2 Select a file
- For split barcodes, once one portion is scanned, the rest is automatically recognized and scanned. If file name or saved directory of a split barcode has been changed, select unrecognized part to be scanned.
- Barcode with changed file size might not be scanned.
- •If barcode is unrecognizable, notification appears.

Creating QR Code

Use Phone Book entry or enter text to create QR Code.

- A QR Code holds up to 211 single-byte or 105 double-byte characters.
- When volume of information is large, a split QR Code automatically appears (up to 16 QR Codes).
- Created QR Code is saved in Pictures in Data Folder. Check saved QR Code in Data Folder (P.10-15).
- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Bar code reader → Create QR code

Create QR Code

- To Create QR Code from Phone Book

 Phonebook → Search and Select entry

 (◆P.2-18) → Select a phone number
- To Create Text QR Code

 Text input → Enter text
- 3 Tap Save
- Phone Book entries converted to QR Codes contain Name, Reading name, Phone number, mail address, Address, and Memo. Other items will not be included.
- Tap Send in QR Code confirmation window to create S! Mail with the created QR Code attached.

Checking Scanned Barcode

Check the saved scanned result.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Bar code reader → Scanned results
- 2 Select a result
- •If scanned result is too large, it will not appear. Some files cannot be opened.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-26

Specifying Saving Location for Created QR Code

File Viewer

Using File Viewer

View document files in Portrait or Landscape view. Rotate handset to automatically rotate Display image.

• This guide describes Portrait View operations.



Portrait View



Landscape View

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient*
 - → File viewer
 - Tap 🕼 to view files on Memory Card.
- Select a file
- Scroll the file to view
 - Tap ar to flip page.
 - Swipe Display to scroll (up/down/left/right).
- Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder. Select an image file saved in Data Folder and File viewer is activated automatically.
- Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. However, browse files of up to 10 MB. In some cases, files under 10 MB may not be browseable.

Note

- If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.
- A file in any language other than Japanese or English may not appear properly.

Zoom In/Out

- Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *File viewer* → Select a file



- Alternatively, press

 ∫ √ □ to adjust magnification.
- Tap 🕕 to show a file to fit Display height. Tap 🕞 to show a file to fit Display width.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.10-27

- Sending Files
- Going to Pages
- Searching Characters in Page
- Capturing Images
- Editing File Name
- Protecting File

Dictionary

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Dictionary
- 2 Tap pulldown menu → English or Japanese
- 3 Tap Word field → Enter a word
- 4 Q → Select a target word

Dummy Call

Setting Dummy Call

Set Dummy Call timer, caller's name and number.

Enabling/Disabling Side Key Activation

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Dummy call → Side key activation
- 2 On/Off
 - When Side key activation is set to On, in Standby, press for two seconds to activate Dummy Call.

Setting Timer

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools →

 Convenient → Dummy call →

 Set timer
- Select time

Setting Caller

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Dummy call → Set caller
- 2 Tap Name field → Enter caller's name
- 3 Tap Phone number field → Enter caller's number

Activating Dummy Call

- 1 In Standby, press for 2 + seconds
 - Set time in Set timer to activate timer at set time.
- Press while Dummy Call rings
- 3 Press after Dummy Call ends
- •If name or number is not set, Withheld appears.
- While Dummy Call rings, menu items at bottom of Display are not selectable.
- When on a Dummy Call if an actual call comes in, the actual incoming call will be given priority and the Dummy Call will be ended.
- When on a Dummy Call if an actual call comes in, the Ringtone will not sound, the tone sounds will sound.
- Alternatively, tap Menu → Tools → Convenient
 → Dummy call → Run dummy call → Yes.
 Dummy Call activates right after the settings even if Set timer is set.

Advanced Settings

1. Advanced Settings

Alarm

Setting/Canceling Alarm

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Alarm* \rightarrow *On* or *Off* beside each Alarm

Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Alarm* \rightarrow Tap Manner mode setting \rightarrow Under *Alarm sound/Vibration*, *On* or *Off*

Calendar

Saving to Schedule

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Calendar \rightarrow Tap Add new \rightarrow Enter title \rightarrow Start date \rightarrow Enter start date \rightarrow Start time \rightarrow Enter start time \rightarrow Ender date \rightarrow Enter end date \rightarrow End time \rightarrow Enter end time \rightarrow Tap OK

To Set Schedule for All Day

Date & Time → Check **All day** → Tap OK → Tap Save

To Set Category

Category → Select an item → Tap Save

To Set Alarm

 $Alarm \rightarrow Alarm \ time \rightarrow Select \ an \ item \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow Select \ an \ item \rightarrow Alert \ tone/video \rightarrow Select \ a \ file \ location \rightarrow Select \ a \ file \rightarrow Adjust \ Volume \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow Select \ an \ item \rightarrow Tap \ OK \rightarrow Tap \ Save$

- For *Other* in *Alarm time* or *Duration*, enter Alarm time or duration.
- While selecting *Alert tone/video*, tap to playback a file.
- •While selecting *Vibration*, tap to view a pattern.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears.

To Repeat a Set Schedule

Repeat → Enter an item → Enter a number of times to repeat → Tap Save

 If No repetition is selected, you do not need to select the number of times to repeat.

To Set Location

Location → Enter location → Tap Save

To Set Guests

Guests → From phonebook/Enter number/ Enter address → Search and select phone number/Enter number/Enter address → Tap OK

- Tap Add guest to add guests.
- Tap Remove guest → Check guest to remove →
 Tap Remove → Yes to remove guest.

To Automatically Delete Schedule

 $Expiry \rightarrow \text{Enter an item} \rightarrow \text{Tap Save}$

 Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar (e.g. if Expiry is After I year, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date). If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select Off to cancel Auto delete.

To Set Details

Details → Enter content → Tap Save

To Set Secret

Under **Secret**, **On** or **Off** \rightarrow Tap Save

Editing Schedule

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap date \rightarrow Tap schedule \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow Save to Schedule (PP.10-18)

Opening a Specific Date

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap Go to

To Show Today's Date Today

■ To Toggle to a Specified Date

Date → Enter date

Switching View Mode

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Calendar* o Tap Switch view

Viewing All Events

Tap $Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow Calendar \rightarrow$ Tap More \rightarrow Show all events

Viewing Schedule by Category

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *List by category* \rightarrow Select item

Sending Schedule

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send*

To Send via Message

Via message → Check a schedule → Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check a schedule → Tap Send → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check a schedule → Tap Send (�P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check a schedule → Tap Send (�P.13-8)

 Alternatively, in Detailed information window for the schedule to send, tap Send and select an item to send it.

Deleting Schedule

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Calendar*

To Delete an Entry

Select a schedule → Tap Delete → Yes

To Delete All Schedules of Selected Date Tap a date to delete in Monthly view or Weekly

view \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow **All this day** \rightarrow **Yes**

•To delete schedules in the date shown in the Daily view, tap More → Delete → Check schedules to delete → Tap Delete → Yes.

To Delete Schedules for a Specified Period of Time

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow **Periods** \rightarrow **From** \rightarrow Enter start date \rightarrow **To** \rightarrow Enter end date \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow **Yes**

To Delete Schedules of Currently Shown Month or Week In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More →

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow **This month** or **This week** \rightarrow **Yes**

To Delete All Schedules before the Highlighted Date

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow **All past data** \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow **Yes**

To Delete All Schedules

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow **All** \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow **Yes**

To Delete Multiple Schedules Listed by Category

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More \rightarrow List by category \rightarrow Select a category \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check schedules to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

When tapping Mark all, enter Phone Password
 → Tap OK → Yes.

Setting Holiday

Tap Menu o Tools o Calendar o Tap More o Settings o Set holiday o (if holiday is already added, tap Add new o) Enter title o Tap Save

- To change date, tap Date → Enter date.
- To change frequency, tap Frequency → Select an item.

Changing Holiday Display

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Set holiday* \rightarrow Under *holiday*, *On* or *Off*

Editing Added Holiday

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Set holiday* \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow Edit the entry \rightarrow Tap Save

Deleting Added Holiday

Tap Menu o Tools o Calendar o Tap More o Settings o Set holiday o Tap Delete o Check entries to delete o Tap Delete o Yes

Setting Beginning of Week

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Calendar* o Tap More o *Settings* o *Starting day* o *Sunday* or *Monday*

Setting Default Calendar View

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Default view mode* → Select an item

Setting Reminder

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Reminder* \rightarrow Under *On/Off, On*

To Set Reminder Time

Tap Time field \rightarrow Enter a time \rightarrow Tap Save

To Set Alarm Sound Duration

Duration → Select an item → Tap Save

•When selecting *Other*, enter duration.

To Set Alarm Sound or Video

Alert tone/video → Select a folder → Select a file → Tap Save

- •In Selecting file window, tap b to playback a file.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.

To Adjust Alarm Volume

Adjust Volume → Tap Save

To Set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save

●Tap ▶ to view a pattern.

Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Manner mode setting* \rightarrow Under *Alarm sound/Vibration, On* or *Off*

Viewing Secret Schedule

Tap Menu → Tools → Calendar → Tap More → $Unlock\ temporarily$ → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Checking Missed Alarm Event

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Calendar* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Missed alarm event* \rightarrow Select a schedule

Viewing Calendar Memory Status

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Memory status*

Saving Schedule as vFile

In Daily view, tap More → Save to Data Folder
→ Select an item → Select a schedule → Yes

Save location can be set to Memory card if inserted.

Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

In Daily view, tap More → *Print via Bluetooth* → Select a schedule (�P.7-17 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

Tasks

Saving Task

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Tap Add new \rightarrow Enter title \rightarrow *Due date* \rightarrow Enter due date \rightarrow *Due time* \rightarrow Enter time \rightarrow Tap OK

To Set Priority

Priority → Select an item → Tap Save

To Set Alarm

 $Alarm \rightarrow Alarm \ time \rightarrow Select \ an \ item \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow Select \ an \ item \rightarrow Alert \ tone/video \rightarrow Select \ a \ location \ to \ save \rightarrow Select \ a \ file \rightarrow Adjust \ volume \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow Select \ an \ item \rightarrow Tap \ OK \rightarrow Tap \ Save$

- ●When *Other* is selected in *Alarm time*, enter Alarm date and time.
- When Other is selected in Duration, enter duration time.
- While selecting *Alert tone*, tap ▶ to playback a file
- While selecting *Vibration*, tap to view a pattern.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.
- At Alarm time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Tap OK to stop Alarm and indicator is cleared. If no Alarm is stopped, Missed Alarm message appears. Tap the message to view the event.

During a call, while dialing (Connecting...
appears) or while dialing (Dialling... appears),
at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator
appears. When Call connect tone on System
sounds is unchecked, only indicator appears
during a call or connection. Tap OK to clear
indicator.

To Set Details

Details → Enter content → Tap Save

To Activate or Cancel Secret

Under Secret, On or $Off \rightarrow Tap Save$

Sorting Tasks

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow *Deadline* or *Priority*

Sending Tasks as vFile

Tap Menu → Tools → Tasks → Tap Send

To Send via Message

Via message → Check tasks → Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check tasks → Tap Send \rightarrow (\clubsuit P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time 2)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared \rightarrow Check tasks \rightarrow Tap Send \rightarrow (♠P.13-3)

■ To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check tasks → Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.13-8)

 Alternatively, in Task details window, tap Send and select an item to send.

Deleting Tasks

Tap Menu → Tools → Tasks

To Select a Tab and Delete

All tasks, Completed tasks, Uncompleted tasks, or Expired tasks tab \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Delete in this tab \rightarrow Check tasks to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

 Alternatively, in Task details window, tap Delete to delete one.

To Delete All Tasks

Tap Delete \rightarrow **Delete all tasks** \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow **Yes**

Searching Tasks

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Search* \rightarrow *By due date/By title* \rightarrow Entering Expiration/Title

Setting Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Manner mode setting* \rightarrow Under *Alarm sound/Vibration, On* or *Off*

Viewing Secret Tasks

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Tasks* o Tap More o *Unlock temporarily* o Enter Phone Password o Tap OK

Viewing Missed Alarm Event

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap More → *Missed alarm event* → Select a missed task to check

 Alternatively, in Task details window, tap More → *Missed alarm event* to view.

Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Print via Bluetooth* \rightarrow Select a task \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-17 Printing via Bluetooth $^{\circ}$ \bigcirc

 Alternatively, in Task details window, tap More → *Print via Bluetooth*.

Viewing Task Item Status

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Memory status*

Editing Tasks

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Select a task to edit \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow Edit Task (\clubsuit P.10-21)

Saving Tasks as vFile

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Tasks* \rightarrow Select a task \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Save to Data Folder* \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow *Yes*

 With Memory Card inserted, Memory card can be set as save location.

Osaifu-Keitai®

Viewing IC Card Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Osaifu-Keitai* \rightarrow *IC card settings* \rightarrow *IC card status*

 When IC card is locked, confirmation message appears. Choose Yes → Enter Phone Password.

Viewing Balance Info

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Osaifu-Keitai* \rightarrow *IC card settings* \rightarrow *Balance info* \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Select Lifestyle-Appli

• Can be used for Lifestyle-Appli that supports viewing balance info. Deleting from balance info list.

Deleting from Balance Info List

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Osaifu-Keitai* o *IC card settings* o *Balance info* o Enter Phone Password o Tap OK o Tap Delete o Check items to delete o Tap Delete o *Yes*

Restricting Functions from Activating Automatically

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Osaifu-Keitai* \rightarrow *IC card settings* \rightarrow *Interface settings* \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Set *Off* for functions to restrict

Restoring to Default Settings

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Osaifu-Keitai* \rightarrow *IC card settings* \rightarrow *Reset* \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow *Yes*

S! GPS Navi

Sending Current Location via Message

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *Location mail* \rightarrow If confirmation appears, choose *Yes* \rightarrow Tap Re-positioning/Skip/OK as required \rightarrow Create message (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc 2)

Saving My Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *My locations* \rightarrow Tap Create new \rightarrow *Name* \rightarrow Enter name \rightarrow *Location info*

■ New Location

New positioning \rightarrow If confirmation appears, choose **Yes** \rightarrow Tap Re-positioning/Skip/OK as required \rightarrow **Yes/No**

 After location is set, tap Re-positioning to retrieve location.

■ Save from History

Form location $logs \rightarrow Tap$ history to save $\rightarrow Yes/No$

Alternatively, Tap Menu → Tools → S! GPS
 Navi → Location logs → Tap history to save → Tap Save.

Viewing Route to Bookmarked Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *My locations* \rightarrow Tap Navigation \rightarrow Tap bookmarked location \rightarrow If confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

• For following operation, follow onscreen instructions.

Viewing Map of Bookmarked Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *My locations* \rightarrow Tap Open map \rightarrow Tap bookmarked location \rightarrow If confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

Sending Bookmarked Location via Message

Tap Menu → Tools → S! GPS Navi → My locations → Tap More → Send via message → Tap bookmarked location to send → Create message (PP.4-4 S! Mail 2)

Deleting Bookmarked Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *My locations* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Delete* \rightarrow Check bookmark to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

Viewing Location History

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *Location logs* \rightarrow Select history

• 💸 displays occasions on which location information could not be retrieved.

Viewing Route to Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *Location logs* \rightarrow Tap Navigation \rightarrow Tap Location logs \rightarrow If confirmation appears, *Yes*

Viewing Map of Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *S! GPS Navi* \rightarrow *Location logs* \rightarrow Tap Open map \rightarrow Tap Location logs to view \rightarrow If confirmation appears, *Yes*

Sending Location via Message

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow S! GPS Navi \rightarrow Location logs \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Send via message \rightarrow Tap Location logs to send \rightarrow Create message (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc 2)

Deleting a Location

Tap Menu \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow S! GPS Navi \rightarrow Location logs \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Check location logs to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

Expense Manager

Deleting an Expense Record

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Expense manager* \rightarrow Tap Delete

■ To Delete Expense Information for Selected Day All this day → Yes

■ To Delete Expense Information for a Period of Time

Periods → Tap From field → Enter start time → Tap To field → Enter end time → Tap Delete → Yes

■ To Delete Expense Information for Current Month

This month → Yes

■ To Delete All Expense Information

All → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes

Saving Expenses Information to Notepad

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Expense manager* → Tap Monthly expense → Tap Save to Notepad → *Yes*

World Clock

Deleting World Clock

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *World clock* \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check an item \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow *Yes*

Setting Dual Clock

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *World clock* \rightarrow Tap Set on dual clock \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow *Set as 1st clock/Set as 2nd clock* \rightarrow Tap OK

Stopwatch

Saving Stopwatch Content to Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Stopwatch* \rightarrow *Start* \rightarrow *Stop* \rightarrow *Save to Notepad* \rightarrow *Yes*

Countdown Timer

Changing Alarm

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Countdown timer* \rightarrow Tap Settings

To Set Duration

Duration → Select an item → Tap Save

• When selecting *Other*, enter duration.

To Alert Tone

Alert tone → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Save

To Set Volume

Set volume in Volume field

To Set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save

Good Night Timer

Resetting Good Night Timer

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Good night timer* \rightarrow Tap Reset \rightarrow *Yes*

Calculator

Adding Calculation Result to Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Calculator* \rightarrow Enter calculation \rightarrow fx \rightarrow \bowtie \rightarrow *Yes*

Complete calculation to save results to Notepad.

Currency/Unit Conversion

Viewing Exchange Rate

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Converter* → *Currency* → Tap Currency field → Select Original currency → Tap View rate

Changing Exchange Rate

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Converter* → *Currency* → Tap View rate → Select a currency → Enter rate

Adding Currency Unit

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Converter* → *Currency* → Tap View rate → Tap Add rate → Enter currency unit name → Enter rate

Deleting Added Currency Unit

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Converter* → *Currency* → Tap View rate → Tap Delete rate → Check currency unit to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

 When Mark all is tapped, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Saving Results to Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Converter* \rightarrow Convert Currencies/Convert Units \rightarrow Tap Save to Notepad \rightarrow *Yes*

Notepad

Sending Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Notepad* \rightarrow Tap Send

- To Use Notepad Data as Message Text

 As message text → Select a Notepad → (◆P.4-4 S!

 Mail ②)
 - If Notepad contains Hangul characters, Graphic Mail will be unavailable.

To Send via Message

Via message → Check a Notepad → Tap Send → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check a Notepad → Tap Send → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check a Notepad → Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.13-3 Sending Data Items One at a Time \bigcirc 1)

■ To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission \rightarrow Check a Notepad \rightarrow Tap Send \rightarrow (�P.13-8)

• Alternatively, in Detail window, tap Send to send.

Deleting Notepad

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Convenient* o *Notepad* o Tap Delete o Check a Notepad o Tap Delete o *Yes*

- Enter Phone Password to delete all entries.
- Alternatively, in Detail window, tap Delete to delete one Notepad.

Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Notepad* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Memory status*

Searching Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Notepad* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Search* \rightarrow Enter searching text

Viewing Notes by Category

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Notepad* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *List by category* \rightarrow Select category

Saving Notes to Data Folder

Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Notepad → Tap More → Save to Data Folder → Phone/ Memory card → Select Saving Notepad → Yes

Editing Notepad

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Convenient* o *Notepad* o Select a Notepad o Tap Text field o Edit Notepad

Changing Notepad Category

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Notepad* → Select a Notepad → Tap category field → Select category

Voice Recorder

Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Voice* $recorder \rightarrow$ Record a sound \rightarrow Tap Set as \rightarrow Select a Ringtone

 If Caller ringtone is selected, search and select entry (◆P.2-18).

Moving Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice*recorder → Record a sound → Tap Data Folder

→ Tap Move → Select an item → Check a file to

move → Tap Move → Select a location to save

Copying Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Voice* $recorder \rightarrow$ Record a sound \rightarrow Tap Data Folder \rightarrow Tap Copy \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Check a file to copy \rightarrow Tap Copy \rightarrow Select a location to save

Sending Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Voice* $recorder \rightarrow$ Record a sound \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send*

To Send via Message
Via message → (♠ P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

 $Via\ Bluetooth$ → (\bigcirc P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time \bigcirc 2)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared (�P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission Via IC transmission (�P.13-8)

Deleting Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Voice recorder* \rightarrow Record a sound \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Delete* \rightarrow *Yes*

Editing Recorded Sound File Name

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice*recorder → Record a sound → Tap More →

Rename → Enter file name

Protecting Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Voice recorder* \rightarrow Record a sound \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Lock* or *Unlock*

Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Voice recorder* \rightarrow Record a sound \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Details*

Changing Default Name at Saving

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice recorder* → Tap Rec. settings → *Default name* → Enter file name

Changing Recording Time

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice recorder* → Tap Rec. settings → *Recording time* → Select an item

• If *Other* is selected, enter recording time.

Changing Default Saving Location

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *Voice recorder* → Tap Rec. settings → *Set default memory* → Select an item

 If Memory Card is not inserted, Memory Card cannot be set as save location

Barcode Reader

Using Scanned Data

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Bar code* reader \rightarrow *Scan barcode* \rightarrow Scan a barcode

To Call Scanned Phone Number

Select a number with *TEL*: or ten to 32-digit number starting with 0 → *Select* → *Voice call*, *Video call* or *Edit before call*

- If Edit before call is selected, edit phone number then Call or Tap Video call.
- To Send Message to Scanned Phone Number Select a number with *TEL*: or ten to 32-digit number starting with 0 → *Select* → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (�P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤, �P.4-7 SMS ⑥)
- To Send Message to Scanned Mail Address
 Highlight mail address contained with @ → Select
 → Create message → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ⑤)
- To Access Scanned URL

 Highlight URL starting with $http://or \ rtsp:// \rightarrow Select \rightarrow Go \ to \ URL \rightarrow Yes$
- **To Save Scanned Entry to Phone Book**Highlight an entry → **Select** → Tap Save
- To Save Scanned Number, etc. as a New Phone Book Entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. \rightarrow *Select* \rightarrow *Add to phonebook* \rightarrow *New* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.2-17 Creating New Entries \bigcirc

To Add Scanned Number, etc. to an Existing Phone Book Entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. \rightarrow *Select* \rightarrow *Add to phonebook* \rightarrow *Update* \rightarrow Search and select entry (\bigcirc P.2-18) \rightarrow Creating New Entries (\bigcirc P.2-17)

To Add Scanned URL to Bookmarks

Highlight a URL \rightarrow *Select* \rightarrow *Add to bookmark* \rightarrow Enter a title

To Copy Scanned Mail Address or Phone Number, etc.

Highlight an mail address or phone number → Tap Copy → Select an item

- For Copy Text, tap the first character to copy →
 Tap Start point → Tap the last character to copy →
 Tap End point.
- To Paste Scanned Phone Number, Mail
 Address, etc. to Message Text
 Tap Send → Tap OK → S! Mail or SMS → (◆P.4-4
 S! Mail ②, P.4-7 SMS ②)

To Paste a Scanned Phone Number or Mail Address to Message Text

Tap Send → Tap Cut → Tap the first letter and Tap Start point → Tap the last letter and set range → Tap End point → Tap OK → S! Mail or SMS→ (\clubsuit P.4-4 S! Mail ?, P.4-7 SMS ?)

To Copy Scanned Characters

Tap Copy → Tap the first letter and tap Start point → Tap the last letter → Tap End point

Specifying Saving Location for Created QR Code

Tap Menu → Tools → Convenient → Bar code reader → Create QR code → Phonebook or Text input → (\mathfrak{S} P.10-15 Creating QR Code \mathfrak{Q}) → Tap Save to → Select an item → Tap Save

Attaching Created QR Code to Message to Send

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Bar code reader* \rightarrow *Create QR code* \rightarrow *Phonebook* or *Text input* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.10-15 Creating QR Code \bigcirc) \rightarrow Tap Send \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.4-4 S! Mail \bigcirc)

File Viewer

Deleting Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow \longrightarrow *Yes*

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow 1

Sending Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Send

To Send via Message

 $Via\ message$ → (�P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

 $Via\ Bluetooth$ → (�P.13-6 Sending One Item at a Time ②)

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared (♠P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → (♠P.13-8)

Going to Pages

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Go to \rightarrow Select an item

- For Page, specify page number.
- Tap or to go to another page.

Searching Characters in Page

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *File viewer* → Select a file → Tap Search → Enter keyword

- After the search results appear, to find the next/ previous word in the document that matches the same search word, tap Next/Previous.
- To exit the search mode, tap End Search.
- To try to search using other words without exiting, tap New search.

Capturing Images

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Capture screen*

• Captured image is saved in JPEG format to Pictures in Data Folder of handset.

Editing File Name

Tap Menu o *Tools* o *Convenient* o *File viewer* o Select a file o Tap More o *Rename* o Enter file name

Protecting File

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Lock* or *Unlock*

Assigning Scroll Range

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Convenient* → *File viewer* → Select a file → Tap More → *Settings* → Panning → Select an item

Fitting to Display

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Under *Reflow, On* or *Off*

Setting Map

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Under *Map on, On* or *Off*

• Current position is framed in blue.

Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *File viewer* \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Tap Screen capture name field \rightarrow Enter file name

Dictionary

Saving Searching Data to Notepad

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Tools* \rightarrow *Convenient* \rightarrow *Dictionary* \rightarrow Tap pulldown menu \rightarrow *English* or *Japanese* \rightarrow Tap Word field \rightarrow Enter a word \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a target word \rightarrow Tap Save to Notepad \rightarrow *Yes*

Handset Security

Handset Security	11-2
Changing Phone Password	11-3
Phone Lock Activating/Canceling Phone Lock Activating/Canceling Auto Lock Activating/Canceling Password Lock Activating/Canceling PIN Code Activating/Canceling USIM Lock Toggling Facial Recognition	11-3 11-4 11-4 11-5 11-5
Function Lock	11-7
Restoring Default Settings Clearing Phone Memory Resetting Settings. All Reset.	11-8 11-8
Advanced Settings	11-9 11-9



Handset Security

This handset features built-in security measures for safer handset use.

Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

Lock handset for information security. Handset operations cannot be executed while locked.

Password

Use Phone Lock, Password Lock, or USIM Lock ($\ensuremath{ \odot \hspace{-0.07em} \bullet \hspace{-0.07em} } P.11\mbox{-}3).$



• Facial Recognition

Verifies user from registered images (♦P.11-5).





Function Lock

Activate to require Phone Password to use Phone Book, Messaging, or other privacy related functions.











Restoring Default Settings

Clear Phone Book entries; restore function settings to defaults.

Changing Phone Password

There are two security codes; Phone Password and PIN/PIN2.

Changing Phone Password

Default: Phone Password is set to "9999".

1 Tap Menu → Settings →
Security → Change password



- Enter current Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Enter new Phone Password (four- to eight-digit) → Tap OK
- 4 Enter new Phone Password again → Tap OK

Advanced

₹ Settings

Change Phone Password (P.14-22)

Changing PIN/PIN2

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Security → Change PIN or
 Change PIN2
 - Set PIN certification to On to enable PIN code (◆P.11-4).
- Enter current PIN or PIN2 → Tap OK
- 3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (four- to eight-digit) → Tap OK
- 4 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (four- to eight-digit) → Tap OK

Phone Lock

The following lock functions are available:

- Phone Lock
- Auto Lock
- Password Lock
- PIN Certification
- USIM Lock
- Facial Recognition

Activating/Canceling Phone Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password each time handset is powered on.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security
- 2 Under *Phone lock, On* or *Off*
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- All operations including receiving calls are not accepted unless you enter Phone Password.

Activating/Canceling Auto Lock

If it is *On, Auto lock* is automatically activated when Display is turned off.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Touch panel
- 2 Under Auto lock, On or Off

Activating/Canceling Password Lock

After **Password lock** is activated, phone password is required for handset operations such as turning on handset or turning off the Display. No operations are accepted until you enter the correct password, except some operations such as receiving calls.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security
- 2 Password lock
- 3 Select an option
 - To Activate It When Turning Off Display or on Handset Power: Auto
 - To Activate It When Turning On Handset: At power On
 - To Deactivate It : Off
- 4 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Activating/Canceling PIN Code

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details, see "USIM Card" (♠P.1-7).

To activate PIN Certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to ${\it On}$.

Setting

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security
- 2 Under PIN certification, On or Off
- 3 Enter PIN → Tap OK

Canceling

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated to restrict handset operations. To cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, perform following operations.

- In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code → Tap OK
- 2 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (four- to eight-digit) → Tap OK
- 3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (four- to eight-digit) → Tap OK

Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (◆P.15-27).
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning handset off does not reset the count).
- Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (◆P.15-27).

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Activate/Cancel PIN Certification (P.14-22)
- Change PIN (P.14-22)
- Change PIN2 (P.14-22)

Activating/Canceling USIM Lock

Activate this function to require USIM Password to use handset with a different USIM Card.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security
- 2 Under USIM lock, On or Off
- 3 Enter USIM Password (four- to eight-digit) → Tap OK
 - To set to On, enter USIM password (four- to eight-digit) again and tap OK.
- USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. Change USIM Password each time *USIM lock* is set to *On*.
- If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with *USIM lock* set to *On* and reset all settings
 (♠P.11-9).

Advanced

₹ Settings

Activate/Cancel USIM Lock (P.14-22)

Toggling Facial Recognition

When powered on, handset verifies user with a registered image. If Facial Recognition fails, handset is disabled.

Activate Facial Recognition. Save a user beforehand.

- Facial Recognition matches current image to one saved beforehand. When capturing images or using Facial Recognition, remember these points:
- Make sure your face (eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, etc.) is clearly visible. Facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, hat, etc., inhibiting image capture or recognition.
- Face should be lit evenly and brightly. Avoid Backlight, strong light, or shadows.

Note

- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed.
 SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages associated with Facial Recognition.
- Phone Password is required for Facial Recognition settings or cancellation upon recognition failure. Changing Phone Password enhances security (P.11-3).

Setting

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security → Facial recognition
- Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Under *On/Off, On* or *Off*
 - If image is not registered, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to register image.
- ullet Enter Phone Password ullet Tap OK to set to \emph{Off} .
- Set to On to match your face to the saved portrait when handset is turned on. If the recognition fails, handset is disabled.

Saving User

Save image, name and question & answer from which to verify user should recognition fail.

Save up to five users, and save up to five images per user. Change location (home, office, inside vehicle or station, etc.) or condition (face angle, accessories, glasses, etc.) for each shot.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Security → Facial recognition
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 User registration
- 4 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- **5** Select from *User 1* to *User 5*
- 6 Select from *Image1* to *Image5*
- Frame your face on Display → Tap Start → Tap Save

- Image capture may take time. Stay still until complete.
- •A confirmation appears if registration fails. Change shooting conditions and start over.
- Saving multiple images increases recognition accuracy, however, security may be compromised.
- The same image can be saved to multiple users. This may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight and frame whole face with no expression. If face is too small, image may not be saved. Do not change face angle while shooting.

Recognition Guidance

Activate for Facial Recognition guidance. Cancel it for recognition message with no image. Select *Preview* to show image.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Security → Facial recognition
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Guidance
- 4 Off or Preview

Setting Security Level

Select recognition accuracy level.

Accuracy levels are as follows.

Item	Description
High	Unsaved faces are least likely to be recognized by mistake. However, your face may also be difficult to recognize.
Normal	An intermediate setting.
Low	Saved face is most recognizable. However, unsaved faces are more likely to be recognized by mistake.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security → Facial recognition
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Security level
- 4 High, Normal, or Low

Starting Facial Recognition

Handset power on initiates Facial Recognition.

If captured image matches, handset is enabled.

- 1 Frame your face on Display
- 2 If Facial Recognition fails, tap Recog. to try again
 - To Use Facial Recognition
 Frame your face on Display → Tap Recog.
 - To Access Using Phone Password

 Tap Code → Enter Phone Password →

 Tap OK
- When Guidance (◆P.11-6) is Preview, image appears. When face is recognized, focus moves to recognized face. Recognition result appears with Matching (green frame), Similar (yellow frame), or Unknown (red frame).
- Sub camera is used for Facial Recognition. Dust or smudges on the lens may lead to recognition failure. Clean with a soft cloth before use.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.11-9

Deleting Images

₹ Settings

- Activate/Cancel Facial Recognition (P.14-22)
- Save Facial Recognition User (P.14-22)
- Show/Hide Guidance (P.14-22)
- Set Security Level (P.14-22)

Function Lock

Activating Function Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password to open Phone Book, Calendar, Yahoo! Keitai, Messaging, Call Log, or Data Folder.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security → Function lock
- Check functions to lock → Tap Save
- Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Activating/Canceling Secret Mode

Select *Hide* to activate this function and hide secret Phone Book entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules. or Tasks.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security → Secret mode
- Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Show or Hide
- Powering handset off then back on activates Secret mode.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Activate/Cancel Phone Lock (TPP.14-22)
- Activate/Cancel Password Lock (P.14-22)
- Activate/Cancel Function Lock (@P.14-22)
- Activate/Cancel Secret Mode (TP P.14-22)

Restoring Default Settings

Clearing Phone Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging, handset Phone Book entries, Calendar/Tasks, Notepad, or User's Dictionary. Alternatively, clear all handset files at once.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Memory settings → Phone memory → Tap Clear
- Select items to delete → Tap Clear
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes

Resetting Settings

Reset settings to clear saved contents/settings and resort default settings.

The following settings are affected.

Item	Affected Settings
Tools	Alarm
TV	· Watch TV · Settings
Settings	Each setting

The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Tools	Calendar Tasks My location/Location logs Expense manager Exchange rate in Currency Notepad
Data Folder	Contents in each folder
TV	TV links Program guide TV player TV image Reservation list
Phone func.	Phonebook Call log Numbers in Account details Group name and contents of Mail group in USIM card

	Item	Unaffected Settings
Se	ttings	
	Phone Settings	· User's dictionary
	Security	 USIM lock PIN certification Change PIN Change PIN2
	Call Settings	 • Voice mail On settings • Call forwarding On settings • Call waiting settings • Call barring settings • Edit Black list contents
М	essages	Messages in folders

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security → Reset settings
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes
 - Handset restarts.

All Reset

Restore handset to defaults and delete Phone Book entries (Phone), Call Log, Messaging, and Data Folder contents/settings. However, preinstalled files are not deleted.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Security → All reset
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes
 - Handset restarts.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Delete Phone Book Entries, Messages, etc. (TPP.14-22)
- Restore Settings to Default Values (P.14-22)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Facial Recognition

Editing User Information

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Facial recognition \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow User registration \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Select user \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.11-6 Saving User \bigcirc 5)

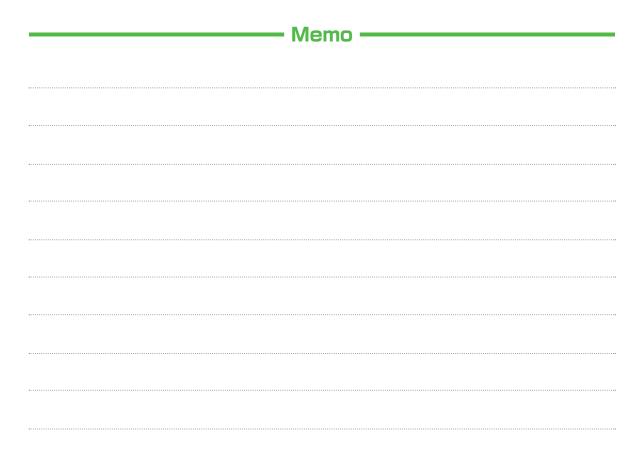
Viewing Images

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Facial recognition \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow User registration \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Select user \rightarrow Select image

 When multiple portraits are saved, tap ◀ or ▶ to check another one.

Deleting Images

Tap Menu → Settings → Security → Facial recognition → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → User registration → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select user → Select image → Tap Delete → Yes



Data Folder & Memory Card

Data Folder
Viewing Files 12-4 Using Image Viewer 12-4 Viewing Graphics/Animation 12-5 Zooming In/Out 12-5 Saving Face Link 12-5 Face Link 12-6
Managing Files/Folders 12-7 Creating Folders 12-7 Renaming File/Folder 12-7 Moving File/Folders 12-8 Copying Files/Folders 12-8 Deleting Files/Folders 12-8
Memory Card 12-9 Initializing Memory Card 12-9 Inserting & Removing 12-10 Viewing Memory Card Files 12-10
Viewing Memory Status 12-11
Advanced Settings 12-11 Viewing Files 12-11 Managing Files/Folders 12-12 Memory Status 12-14



Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

Default Folders

Handset automatically sorts files into these folders:

	Folder/Description	File Type ¹
Pictures/My Pictograms/Mail Art		
	Image files captured with handset camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
	My Pictograms	GIF, GPK
	Image files related to message	JPEG, GIF
ī	Ring songs • tones	
	Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	
S! Appli		
	Download S! Appli	JAD, JAR
	Widget	
	Mobile widget contents and flash format widget provided by SAMSUNG	WGT, SWGT
Music/WMAudio (Memory Card only)		ly)
	Downloaded Chaku-Uta®	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, 3gp), smc, WMA
ignarrow Videos/WMVideo (Memory Card only)		nly)
	Handset video files	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), WMV

Folder/Description	File Type ¹
Lifestyle-Appli	
FeliCa (Osaifu-Keitai®) Application etc.	JAD, JAR
Books	
Download Books	CCF
Message Templates	
S! Mail Templates	НМТ
Flash®/Flash® Ringtones	
Flash®:Flash® files Flash® Ringtones:Ringtone assignable downloaded Flash® files	SWF
Other documents	
Document or graphic files requiring File viewer for use on handset, vFiles ² , etc.	© vCard, © vCalendar, © URL, © EML, № PDF, № XLS, № DOC, PPT, E TXT, © HTML, © VNT, OPML, Unsupported file

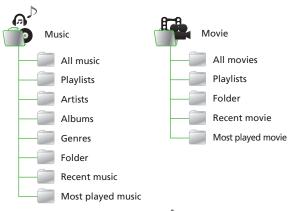
- 1 Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.
- 2 Use vFiles to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. Handset supports vCard (.vcf) for Phone Book entries, and vCalendar (.vcs) for Task/Schedule.

12

- •Save up to 9999 files/folders in each default folder.
- In a folder, use *Memory status* to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in *Settings* (◆P.12-11).
- •In Data Folder, tap 🔯 to open Memory Card Data Folder; tap 醚 to return to handset Data Folder.
- Tap | III / III to toggle between List view and Thumbnail view.
- Q / P appears in some folders as downloaded site shortcut. Select the link to access website via Yahoo! Keitai.
- If files in one default folder are too large, handset performance may fall.

Default Media Folders

Handset sorts music, picture, and video files into the following folders:





Pictures



Digital camera

Data

Viewing Files

View files in Data Folder, like picture, animation etc. Select Data Folder, file list appears.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select a file location
- 3 Select a file in List window
- File List Indicators

- ☐ : Protected
- •• Copy protected file (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
- Copy protected file (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
- : Copy protected file (Nontransferable, Content Key Valid)
- Copy protected file (Nontransferable, Content Key Expired)
- : Used as Widget/Wallpaper/Ringtone etc.
- Protected with WMDRM
- Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.

Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

With Pictures folder open, tap More → *Take photo* to activate Camera in Camera mode. Similarly, with Videos folder open, tap More → *Record video* to activate Camera in Video mode. With Ring songs • tones folder shown, tap More → *Record sound* to activate Voice Recorder. If there is no file in each folder, *Take photo*, *Record video* and *Record sound* menu appear

Note

in Toolbar.

- JPEG files larger than 3MB or 5000 x 5000 pixels cannot be edited. For other formats, only files smaller than 3MB or 1600 x 1600 pixels are editable. JPEG files larger than 5000 x 5000 pixels are not zoomable. For GIF files, zoomable sizes vary by file. For other formats, files larger than 3MB or 5000 x 5000 pixels are not zoomable.
- During playback, video file thumbnails do not appear in a List view.

Using Image Viewer

View images in Portrait or Landscape view. Landscape images automatically rotate when you rotate handset.

- This guide describes Portrait View operations.
- 1 Tap Menu → Data Folder → Pictures
- 2 Select a file



-Tool Icons

- If confirmation appears, select **OK**.
- Rotate handset to rotate Display image.
- Tap Display to show/hide Toolbar.
- 3 Scroll horizontally
- Some images may not appear.

Viewing Graphics/Animation

View graphics/animation in Portrait or Landscape view.

- This guide describes Portrait View operations.
- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location
- Select a file



- Tap III to pause.
- Tap to resume.
- Tap to resume from last played.
- View SWF files in Data Folder.
- •Some files may not appear.
- Selecting a compatible file from Data Folder automatically activates Flash® Viewer.

Zooming In/Out

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select an image
 - If confirmation appears, select OK.



- Alternatively, tap \longrightarrow $\begin{cases} \begin{cases} \blacksquare \end{cases} \end{cases} / \begin{cases} \begin{cases} \begin{cases} \begin{cases} \blacksquare \end{cases} \end{cases} / \begin{cases} \be$
- 3 Tap OK
- Tap 🖩 to fit image to Display height. Tap 🗃 to fit image to Display width.
- Touch and hold image for Zoom indicators. Image expands if scrolled up. Image reduces if scrolled down.

Saving Face Link

Link images to Phone Book entries to place calls or message directly from still images.

Link up to ten Phone Book entry items to a still image.

Capturing & Setting Still Images

- **1 1** (2 + seconds)
- 2 \mathbb{N} → \mathbb{N} → Under Face link display, On → Tap OK
- 3 0 =



- Available only when Face Link is On and Auto save is Off.
- If captured image is recognized, frame appears.
- If Face Link has been saved, name appears. If not, ? appears.
- If captured image is not recognized, frame does not appear. The image is saved and Capture window reappears.
- If *Auto save* is *On*, image will be saved and Capture window will reappear.

Data

- Tap Face Link for linking
- 5 Search and select entry (♦P.2-18)
- 6

- 6 Tap Save
- Search and select entry (♦P.2-18)
- •Memory Card files cannot be set as Face Link.

Face Link

Place a call or message via Face Link image.

Calling/Messaging from Image Window

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select file
 - If confirmation appears, select OK.
- - If multiple Face Links are set, tap one.
- 3 Place a call or message
 - To View Other Face Link Images
 This person's photo
 - To Select Images to be Saved as Face Link Images

This person's photo → Tap Add → Select File → (if Face Link is not saved) Tap frame on face

To Search & Save the Same Face Link Images

This person's photo → Tap Face search → Yes

To Deactivate the Same Face Link Images

This person's photo → Tap Release → Check file → Tap Release → Yes

Adding Data to Saved Image

- 1 Tap Menu → Data Folder → Pictures
- Select a file
 - If confirmation appears, select **OK**.
- 3
- Tap Add name tag
- 5 Drag and drop frame



- To Place a Voice Call
- **To Message**S! Mail → (◆P.4-5 S! Mail ⑤)
- To View Phone Book
 View phonebook

Sending Face Link Image by Mail

- 1 Tap Menu → Data Folder → Pictures → Select file
 - If confirmation appears, select OK.
- 2
- 3 Tap Send via msg.
- 4 Tap Send (♦P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.12-11

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

Managing Files/Folders

Make sub-folder under Pictures folder or Videos folder. Copy, move, or delete folder or file.

Creating Folders

Create sub-folder in default folders. Use **Set secret** to hide created folder.

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder*
- Select folder to create a subfolder
- 3 Tap More → Manage → Create folder
 - If there is no sub-folder or file in the folder, menu in Toolbar varies.
- 4 Enter name
- •New folder cannot be created in a created folder.

Renaming File/Folder

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select folder → Tap More → Manage → Rename
- 3 Select file or sub-folder to rename
- 4 Enter name
- Protected files cannot be renamed.

Moving File/Folder

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or folders between handset (Phone) and Memory Card.

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder*
- Select folder → Tap Move → Folders or Files
- 3 Check files or sub-folders to move → Tap Move
- 4 Select a destination folder
 - If Memory Card is inserted, tap I to switch between handset and Memory Card.

- Protected files cannot be moved.
- •If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.
- •To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose *No* to move only files without set functions. Press \(\sigma_{out}\) to cancel moving.

Note

- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or if a different USIM Card is inserted.
- Nontransferable and unusable files (
), protected files (
), or nontransferable and Copy protected files (
) or
) cannot be moved to Memory Card.

Copying Files/Folders

Copy a file or folder and paste in the same or another folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between handset and Memory Card.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select folder → Tap Copy → Folders or Files
- 3 Check files or sub-folders to copy → Tap Copy
- Select a destination folder
 - If Memory Card is inserted, tap \(\begin{align*} \textit{/ \textit{\textit{\textit{B\$}}}} \textit{/ \textit{\textit{B\$}}} \text{ to switch between handset and Memory Card.}
- When pasting files/folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "_0001" are automatically added to pasted file/folder names.
- •If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.

Note

• Nontransferable files cannot be copied.

Deleting Files/Folders

1 Tap Menu → Data Folder → Select a file location → Tap Delete



- Check files or sub-folders to delete → Tap Delete → Yes
 - If Mark all is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.
- •When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose Yes → Except protected to delete only files not set to functions and unprotected files.
- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to delete both file and Content Key.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.12-12

- Editing Image with Image Editor
- Using Oekaki Anime with Still Image
- Viewing Slide Show
- Sending Files
- Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®
- Sorting Files
- Deleting Content Key
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock
- Setting Images as Wallpaper etc.
- Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Registering vFile to Other Functions

Memory Card

Handset is compatible with microSD™ and microSDHC™ Memory Card. Purchase Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other Memory Cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.
- SoftBank Mobile recommends 64, 128, 256, 512
 MB, 1, 2 GB microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory
 Cards or 4, 8, 16 GB microSDHC™ Memory Cards.

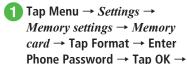
Note

Protect Important Information

- Memory Card files may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.
- Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Initializing Memory Card

Format Memory Card, delete all data on Memory Card. Make sure to format Memory Card before insetting it.



Yes

Inserting & Removing

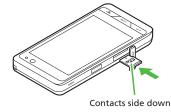
Turn handset power off before inserting or removing Memory Card.

Inserting

Open and rotate Memory Card cover



2 With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks



3 Close Memory Card cover

Removing

1 Open and rotate Memory Card cover



2 Card pops out; remove it



- **3** Close Memory Card cover
- •If Memory Card Data Folder is open when Memory Card is removed, Phone Data Folder appears.

Note

- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/ removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.
- Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.
- Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Check Memory Card Details (P.14-23)
- Rename Memory Card (P.14-23)
- Format Memory Card (P.14-23)
- Set Default Memory to Phone/Memory Card (P.14-23)

Viewing Memory Card Files

- 1 Tap Menu → Data Folder
- 2 Tap 📴
 - Inset Memory Card before checking it.
 - To check Phone Data Folder, Tap 🔐.

Viewing Memory Status

View following information.

- Status of message folder
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar or Tasks items registered
- Status of memory in Notepad
- Status of Phone Book (handset and USIM Card)
- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Memory settings → Memory
 status



View each item

- To View Messaging Status

 Messaging
 - Received, Drafts, Sent and Unsent Mail memory appears by Size.
 - memory appears by Size.

 Select *Count* from pulldown menu to
 - see messaging memory by Count.
 - USIM Card SMS appears in *Count* only.
- To View Data Folder Status

Data Folder → Phone memory/ Memory card

- To View Calendar or Tasks Status Calendar/Tasks
- To View Notepad Status

 Notepad
- To View Phone Book Entries

 Phonebook

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.12-14

Deleting Registered/Saved Data

₹ Settings

- Confirm Total/Remaining Phone Memory (P.14-23)
- Clear Phone Memory (P.14-23)
- View Memory Status (P.14-23)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Viewing Files

Purchasing/Downloading Content Key

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Tap More → *Manage* → *Download Content key* → Select a file → Follow onscreen instructions

Viewing Graphics/Animation in SWF

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file

To Hide Buttons

Tap Hide buttons

- Tap Show buttons to show buttons.
- To Show Keypad
 Tap Keypad
- To Toggle Full/Normal View
 Tap More → Full view
 - Press CLEAR to return to normal view.
- To Change Image Quality

 Tap More → Quality → Select an item

Deleting File

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *Yes*

• If no tool icon appears, tap the screen.

Data

12

Confirming File Details

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow ①

• If no tool icon appears, tap the screen.

Capturing Document View Page

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select file \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Capture screen*

• Captured image is saved to Pictures folder.

Going to PDF/DOC File View Pages

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Go to → *Previous page/Next page/First page/Last page/Page*

- If *Page* is selected, specify page number.
- Tap / to go to pages.

Searching PDF/DOC File Text

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Search \rightarrow Enter text to search

- Words that match are highlighted. Tap Prev. or Next to search for the previous or next match.
- To try to search using other text without exiting, tap New search.

Managing Files/Folders

Editing Image with Image Editor

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow *Image editor* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-13 Editing Still Images \bigcirc 4)

Using Oekaki Anime with Still Image

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Edit \rightarrow *Oekaki anime* \rightarrow (\bigcirc P.7-13 Oekaki Anime \bigcirc 3)

Viewing Slide Show

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow *Pictures* \rightarrow Select a file to view first \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Slide show*

- To pause Slide show, tap Display and III.
- To view next/previous slide, tap or ...

Sending Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Send*

To Send via Message

Via message → Select a file (♦P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To Send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check file to send → Tap Send → $(\mathfrak{O}P.13-6 \text{ Sending One Item at a Time } \mathfrak{O})$

To Send via Infrared

Via infrared → Check file to send → Tap Send (♠P.13-3)

To Send via IC Transmission

Via IC transmission → Check file to send → Tap Send (�P.13-8)

Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Print*

Via USB

Via USB → Check file to print → Tap Print → $(\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \)$

Via Bluetooth®

 $Via\ Bluetooth$ → Check file to print → Tap Print → (\bigcirc P.7-17 Printing via Bluetooth $^{\otimes}$ \bigcirc)

Sorting Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Sort by* \rightarrow Select an item

- Sort by following order.
 - Descending order by date (Date)
 - File type (Type)
 - File name (Name)
 - Ascending order by file size (Size)
 - Title (Title)
 - Content Key status (Content key type)
- Folders appear at the top of list.
- When selecting *Type*, files are sorted in alphabetical order by file extension.
- When selecting *Name*, files are sorted in order of numerics → alphabets → Japanese syllabary.
- Files in Message templates folders cannot be sorted by *Type*.
- When selected Content key type, files appear as follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy Protected (Content key valid) → Copy Protected (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.
- Files without title names cannot be sorted by Title.

Adding Sound Files/Video Files to Playlist

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow *Ring songs* · *tones, Music*, or *Videos* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Manage* \rightarrow *Add to playlist* \rightarrow Check files to add \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Select a playlist

 To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create in Add to Playlist window.

Toggling Format of Sound Files/Video Files/ Message Template Files

Tap Menu \rightarrow Data Folder \rightarrow Ring songs · tones, Music, Videos or Message Templates \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow View by \rightarrow File name/Title

Managing Content Key in Data Folder

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Manage* \rightarrow *Download Content key* \rightarrow Select Content Key to view

- When a folder containing a Content Key is opened, all Data Folder/Memory Card Content Keys appear.
- If no files require Content Key, Download Content key does not appear.

Deleting Content Key

Tap Menu \rightarrow **Data Folder** \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow **Manage** \rightarrow **Download Content key** \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Check Content Key to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow **Yes**

• If no files require Content Key, *Download Content key* does not appear.

Setting Secret in Sub-folder

Tap Menu o *Data Folder* o Select a subfolder location to set secret o Tap More o *Set/Unset secret* o Enter Phone Password o Tap OK o Select a folder to set secret o Tap OK

• To release the secret setting, remove check.

Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily

Tap Menu o *Data Folder* o Select a folder location o Tap More o *Unlock temporarily* o Enter Phone Password o Tap OK

Activating Camera Mode

Tap Menu o *Data Folder* o *Pictures* o Tap More o *Take photo*

 If there is no file saved in Pictures folder, tap Take photo.

Activating Video Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow *Videos* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Record video*

 If there is no file saved in Videos folder, tap Record video

Recording Sound

Tap Menu → Data Folder → Ring songs · tones → Tap More → Record sound

• If there is no file saved in Ring songs • tones folder, tap Record sound.

Setting & Canceling File Lock

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Lock/Unlock* \rightarrow Tap OK

- To release the lock, tap
- Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving, or deleting.

Setting Images as Wallpaper etc.

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Set as

- To Set Image as Wallpaper

 Wallpaper → Preview image → Tap Set
- To Set Image as Incoming Image

 Caller ID → Search and select Phone Book entry

 (◆P.2-18) → Tap Set
- To Set Image as Alternative Picture

 Still image → Tap OK
- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.

Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow Tap Menu \rightarrow *Set as*

- To Set to Ringtone for Each Function Voice ringtone, Video ringtone, Message ringtone, S! Friend's Status ringtone, Missed call notification ringtone, S! Quick News ringtone, Delivery report ringtone
- To Set as Ringtone for Phone Book Entry

 Caller ringtone → Search and select entry (�P.2-18)
- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose Yes to complete setting.
- Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copy protected files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow Select a file location \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow \bigcirc Tap Menu \rightarrow *Set as*

- To Set to Ringtone for Each Function Voice ringtone or Video ringtone
- To Set to Ringtone for Phone Book Entry

 Caller ringtone → Select entry to set (�P.2-18)
- Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copy protected files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Registering vFile to Other Functions

Tap Menu → Data Folder → Other documents

- \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow Register to \rightarrow Select an item
- → Select a file
 - Register vCard/vCalendar, etc. files saved in Data Folder to Phone Book or Calendar.

Memory Status

Deleting Registered/Saved Data

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Memory settings \rightarrow Memory status \rightarrow Select data \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Select data to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes

- If Mark all is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.
- Delete message folder messages, Data Folder files, or Calendar/Tasks, Phone Book entries or Notepad.
- If file(s) are locked or set for another function, a confirmation appears.

Connectivity & File Backup

File Transfers & Backup	13-2
Infrared	13-3 13-3
Bluetooth® Toggling Bluetooth® Searching for Bluetooth® Devices. Browsing Connected Device Files Sending Files Receiving Files A/V Headset	13-5 13-6 13-6 13-7
IC Transmission Sending Files Receiving Files	13-8
USB Connection	13-10
Memory Card Backup Backup Precautions Backing Up to Memory Card Loading from Memory Card	13-11 13-11
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) Before Using S! Addressbook back-up Precautions for Synchronizing Synchronizing Phone Book Entries Setting Auto Sync	13-12 13-13 13-13
Advanced Settings Bluetooth® Settings S! Addressbook Back-up	13-14



File Transfers & Backup

Transfer files via Infrared, Bluetooth, etc. Use S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)* to back up handset Phone Book entries. *S! Addressbook Back-up requires a separate subscription.

File Transfers

Use these functions to transfer handset files:

- Infrared (♠P.13-3).
- Bluetooth® (�P.13-5).
- IC transmission (♠P.13-8).
- USB Connection (�P.13-10).

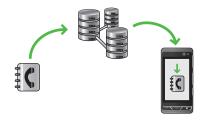


File Backups

Back up handset files to Memory Card or PC (♦P.13-11).



Back up Phone Book entries to Server via S! Addressbook Back-up. Restore lost Phone Book entries from S! Addressbook Back-up. Edit SAB via PC (◆P.13-12).



Exchange files wirelessly with infrared-compatible handsets, PCs or other devices.

- Handset Infrared is based on IrMC1.3.
 Transmission may be unavailable for some functions, even when IrMC1.3 is supported on the other party's handset.
- Infrared is unavailable while messaging or Internet browsing.
- Calling and messaging is unavailable while Infrared is in use.
- Transmissions may be inhibited in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared devices.
- Authorization Code is a four-digit code used to execute infrared file transfers between devices.
 Enter same Authorization Code on both devices when using Transfer All.

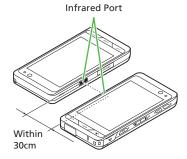
Send and receive Phone Book entries or Calendar entries, Account Details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others. Send either all Phone Book entries, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks/Notepad/Received msg./Drafts/Sent msg. in a single transfer.

Note

- Infrared is unavailable while Internet services/Media Player is in use, or while editing messages/files.
- Some received files cannot be saved on handset.

Aligning Infrared Ports

Place devices within 30 cm. Align device ports.
 Do not place objects in between devices.



- Maintain port alignment until transmission ends.
- A soiled port may inhibit transmission. Clean port with a soft cloth beforehand.
- If transfer fails, a confirmation appears. Review "Aligning Infrared Ports," choose Yes to try again.

Sending Files

First, activate Infrared on the other device.

Sending Items One at a Time

- 1 Send
 - To Send from Data Folder, Calendar, Bookmarks or Widget

In list, tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via infrared* \rightarrow Select item \rightarrow Tap Send

To Send from Phone Book, Tasks, Media Player or Notepad

In list, tap Send \rightarrow *Via* infrared \rightarrow Select item \rightarrow Tap Send

• Some functions allow sending from Details/ Playback window.

Transferring All

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Connectivity → Infrared →
 Transfer all
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

13

13

- ? Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepad, Received msg., Drafts or Sent msg.
 - For **Phonebook**, choose **Yes** to transfer images.
- **Enter Authorization Code** $(four-digit) \rightarrow Tap OK$

Receiving Files

Receiving One Item at a Time

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow $Connectivity \rightarrow Infrared \rightarrow$ Under On/Off, On
 - If Bluetooth® or IC transmission is active. cancellation confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to activate Infrared
 - · Handset is ready to receive files.
- Begin sending from other device within three minutes
- Cancel Calling confirmation appears, choose Yes

- Save confirmation appears, choose Yes
 - To save pictograms, choose Pictures or My Pictograms.
 - To save music files, choose Music or Ring songs · tones.
 - To save Flash® files, choose Flash® or Flash® Ringtones.
 - Tap Cancel to cancel receiving.
 - Press To terminate data reception.
- If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB. handset deletes the image then saves in Phone Book.

Note

• Receive files in Standby. Files cannot be received when Auto Lock/Key Lock is active or during Software Update.

Receiving All

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow $Connectivity \rightarrow Infrared \rightarrow$ Under On/Off, On
 - If Bluetooth, IC transmission is set to On, confirmation appears. Choose Yes to start infrared transmission
 - · Handset is ready to receive files.
- 2 Begin sending from other device within three minutes

- **Cancel Calling confirmation** appears, choose Yes
- **Enter Authorization Code** (four-digit) → Tap OK
 - Enter same Authorization Code as sender.
- Select a saving method
 - To Add Files as New Entries Add New
 - To Overwrite Current Entries Overwrite → Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
 - Receiving all entries deletes existing handset entries except Account Details. Receiving Account Details deletes existing Account Details except handset phone number.
 - Tap Cancel to cancel receiving.
 - Press _ to terminate reception.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Activate/Cancel Infrared Transmission (P.14-25)
- Transfer Account Details (P.14-25)
- Transfer Files (P.14-25)
- Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks at Once (P.14-25)

Bluetooth®

Send and receive Phone Book entries or Calendar/Tasks, Account Details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others.

Send either all Phone Book entries, Calendar/ Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepad, Received msg., Drafts or Sent msg. in a single transfer. Connect Bluetooth®-compatible handsets or other devices to exchange files wirelessly, or handsfree devices for handsfree calling. Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music. Connect handset to PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc. Bluetooth® transmissions require Bluetooth®compatible devices with the same profiles. See following handset Bluetooth® specifications:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth [®] Standard Ver. 2.0
Applicable Profiles	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Serial Port Profile Dialup Networking Profile File Transfer Profile Object Push Profile Advanced Audio Distribute Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Basic Imaging Profile Basic Printing Profile Generic Access Profile Service Discovery Protocol Generic Object Exchange Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class1
Communication Distance ²	Within approximately 20 m
Frequency Band Used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth® QD ID	B015754

- **1** Handset only supports printing-related equipments.
- 2 Varies by radio interference and other conditions.
- Handset may not work with all Bluetooth[®] devices.
- File transfers may not be available with some Bluetooth[®] devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device, even if device meets Bluetooth[®] standards for interference.

- The 2.4 GHz band used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other devices. Transmission rate or distance may be reduced, or transmissions terminated.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices or usage environment.
- Handset cannot be connected to other devices when connected to Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone while playing media files.
- USB and Bluetooth® cannot be used simultaneously.
- Deactivate Bluetooth® before connecting USB Cable.

Toggling Bluetooth®

- Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth
- Tap On or Off
 - If Infrared or IC transmission is active, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes to activate Bluetooth®.
- If Bluetooth® is active, appears at the top of Display. Transfer files or connect compatible devices.

Searching for Bluetooth® Devices

Save Bluetooth[®] devices to paired devices list. Save up to ten devices. Enter same Authorization Code on both handset and device.

Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth
- 2 Tap Search / 🗓
 - If Bluetooth[®] is *Off*, it is activated automatically and searches devices.
- 3 Detected devices are listed, drag device to 1
- 4 Enter Authorization Code (four- to 16-digit) → Tap OK
- 5 Enter same Authorization Code on device within 30 seconds
 - After the target device is connected to handset, look up or get the files stored in that device.

- Authorization Code is a four- to 16-digit password required for transmissions between Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Authorization Code. Authorization Code entry is not required for registered devices.
- If authorization fails, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and repeat from 4.
- If ten paired devices are already registered, oldest is deleted to make room for the new one. If all are authenticated, memory full confirmation appears.
- Paired Devices Indicators
 - 🖳 : Personal Computer 📳 : Mobile phone
 - : Others

- 🖨 : Printer
- (: Handsfree Device/Headset
- If a Bluetooth® connection request appears, choose Yes and enter specified Authorization Code within 30 seconds. For paired devices, choose Yes to establish connection without Authorization Code.

Browsing Connected Device Files

Access connected device's shared folders or files. Import or delete files from the other device.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth
- 2 Tap the registered device's icon → *Browse device*
- 3 Approve access on source device

Sending Files

Sending One Item at a Time

- 1 Select file and send
 - From Data Folder, Calendar, Bookmarks or Widget

In list, tap More \rightarrow *Send* \rightarrow *Via Bluetooth* \rightarrow Select entries \rightarrow Tap Send

From Phone Book, Tasks, Media Player or Notepad

In list, tap Send \rightarrow *Via Bluetooth* \rightarrow Check entry \rightarrow Tap Send

- 2 Drag destination device to
 - Receiver accepts and transfer begins.
 - If device is not registered, tap search.
- Some functions allow sending option from Details or Playback window.

Transferring All

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Connectivity → Bluetooth →
 Tap Transfer all
 - If device is not registered, tap search.
- 2 Drag destination device to □ → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- 3 Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepad, Received msg., Drafts or Sent msg.
 - When *Phonebook* is selected to transfer image file, choose *Yes*.

Receiving Files

Receiving One Item at a Time

After sender approves connection, file transfer begins and received file is saved.

- 1 Transfer confirmation appears, choose Yes
- Received confirmation appears, choose Yes
 - To save pictograms, choose Pictures or My Pictograms.
 - To save music files, choose Music or Ring songs · tones.
 - To save Flash® files, choose Flash® or Flash® Ringtones.
- Received folders are saved to Other documents.
- If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB, handset deletes the image then saves it in Phone Book.

Receiving All

- 1 Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Bluetooth \rightarrow Tap On
 - If Infrared, IC transmission is set to On, confirmation appears. Choose Yes to start Bluetooth® transmission.
 - Handset is set to Standby to receive files.
 Begin sending files from other device.
- **2** Connection confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
- 3 Select a saving method
 - To Add New Files
 - To Delete All to Overwrite Files

Overwrite → Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- When receiving Phone Book entries, all entries except Account Details are deleted. When receiving Account Details, all data except the phone number is overwritten.
- Tap Cancel to cancel the reception.
- Press 🖅 to terminate data reception.

A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music.

 Volume may change depending on volume settings on headphones.

Settings

- Tap Menu → Media Player/TV → Settings → Sound (for TV only) → Sound output
- 2 Select Bluetooth device
- 3 Drag device to connect to
 When no device is registered, search and
 - When no device is registered, search and register new device.

Switching Audio Device

- 1 Activate Media Player
- 2 Tap Menu → *Transfer to headset*
 - If a device is already selected, it will be connected to handset automatically.
- 3 Drag device to connect to
 - When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- To switch output from headsets to handset, tap Menu → *Transfer to Phone*.

13

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.13-14

- Deleting File on Connected Device
- Searching Devices by Type

₹ Settings

- Activate/Cancel Bluetooth® Functions (P.14-24)
- Search for a New Bluetooth® Device (P.14-24)
- Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepads, Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg. at Once (@P.14-24)
- Edit Handset Name (P.14-24)
- Confirm Handset Device Address (TP P.14-24)
- Search/Save from Bluetooth® Devices (TSP P.14-24)
- Set Default Output Device While Watching TV (@P.14-24)
- Set Secure Mode (P.14-24)
- Adjust Handsfree Setting (TP.14-24)
- Set Answering Mode (TP.14-24)
- Set Answer Time (P.14-24)
- Activate/Cancel S! Appli Confirmation (P.14-24)
- Confirm Available Bluetooth® Functions (TEST P.14-24).

IC Transmission

Exchange files wirelessly with IC transmission compatible handsets.

- Supports sending/receiving of IC transmission compatible data.
- When IC card is locked, IC transmission is disabled.
- Handset may not be able to connect to or exchange files with all IC transmission devices.
- Close activated functions when sending/ receiving IC data.
- When having problems sending/receiving files. adjust position of marks on phones.



Align 2.

• Hold \mathcal{L} in place until file transmission completes.

Sending Files

First, activate IC transmission on the other device.

Sending Items One at a Time

- Send
 - To Send from Data Folder, Calendar, **Bookmarks or Widget**

In list, tap More \rightarrow Send \rightarrow Via IC transmission → Check file to send → tap Send

To Send from Phone Book, Tasks. Media Player or Notepad

In list, tap Send → Via IC transmission → Check file to send → tap Send

- Some functions allow sending from Details/ Playback window.
- Align \sim on handsets before starting transmission.

Transferring All

- Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow Connectivity → IC transmission → Transfer all
- Enter PIN → Tap OK

- 3 Phonebook|Calendar|Tasks| Bookmarks|Notepad|Received msg.|Drafts|Sent msg.
 - When *Phonebook* is selected to transfer image file, choose *Yes*.
- 4 Enter Authorization Code (four-digit) → Tap OK
 - Align \bigcirc on handsets before starting transmission.

Receiving Files

Receiving Items One at a Time

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →

 Connectivity → IC transmission

 → Under Receive setting, On
 - $\rightarrow Yes$
 - If Infrared or Bluetooth[®] is active, cancellation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate IC transmission.
 - · Handset is ready to receive files.
- 2 Align 2 on handsets and start transmission
- 3 Confirmation appears, choose Yes

- 4 Save confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
 - When Ask each time is set for Save to, select save location from Phone/Memory Card.
 - Tap Cancel to cancel receiving.
 - Press To terminate reception.
- If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB, handset deletes the image then saves in Phone Book.

Note

 Receive files in Standby. Files cannot be received when Auto Lock is active, All Keys locked or during Software Update.

Receiving All

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Connectivity → IC transmission
 - → Under *Receive setting*, On
 - $\rightarrow Yes$
 - If infrared or Bluetooth[®] is set *On*, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to start IC transmission.
 - · Handset is ready to receive files.
- 2 Align handsets and start data transmission

- 3 Confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
- 4 Enter Authorization Code (four-digit) → Tap OK
 - Enter same Authorization Code as sender.
- Select a saving method
 - To Add Files as New Entries

 All New
 - To Overwrite Current Entries

Overwrite → Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- Receiving all Phone Book entries deletes existing handset entries except Account Details. Receiving Account Details deletes existing Account Details except handset phone number.
- Tap Cancel to cancel receiving.
- Press to terminate reception.

USB Connection

Connect handset to PC to transfer files between devices. Connect printer to print still images. Handset supports USB 2.0.

Install Samsung New PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., access SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/940download.html).

USB Connection

The following operations are available:

- Transfer handset Data Folder files to PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform Packet Communications

Note

 Using handset to access the Internet via PC or PDA (Mobile Data Communication) rapidly incurs high Packet Communication charges. Take notice of large Packet Communications when using Mobile Data Communication.

Sending/Receiving in Mass Storage

With a Memory Card inserted, connect handset to PC via USB Cable to manage card files on PC.

Connecting/Disconnecting to a PC

- 1 Connect handset to PC via USB Cable
- 2 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Connectivity → USB mode →
 Mass storage → Yes
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 4 Use PC to access Memory Card files
- Mass Storage is unavailable while receiving S!
 Mail, using Samsung New PC Studio, or when My status in S! Friend's Status is Online.
- Calling and Messaging are unavailable in Mass Storage.
- 5 On PC, perform device removal
- 6 In Mass storage, tap Exit
- Disconnect USB Cable

Note

 Never disconnect USB Cable before safely removing device on PC first.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Activate Mass Storage (P.14-25)
- Activate Synch Mode to PC (TPP.14-25)

Memory Card Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, etc. to Memory Card (package backup). Restore backed up items as required (package restoration).

- Restore from Backup in case of accidental data loss.
- Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
- Available Backup types

-Phone Book

-Sent msq.

-Calendar

-Unsent msg.

Tasks

-Notepad

-Received msa.

-Content Key

-Drafts

-Bookmarks

 Use Backup to save files, share information between Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

Backup Precautions

- Not available when battery is low.
- During backup or restoration, handset transmissions are not possible.
- Some files cannot be backed up. Some backed up files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

- Backup may fail if handset/Memory Card memory is too low.
- Handset holds up to 500 Calendar/Tasks entries.
 When 500 entries are restored from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and extra entries are not saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- If a backed up bookmark is too large it may not be restorable.
- Some images set to Phone Book entries may not be transferred because of size.
- Backup data saved on Memory Card is not accessible on handset until restored from Memory Card.
- When backing up Content Keys, note the following:
 - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time. To backup another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (to keep the previously backed up files, restore the Content Key to handset from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
 - Backing up a file containing a Content Key to Memory Card moves Content Key from handset to Memory Card makes the file inaccessible.
 - Restoring a file with a Content Key to handset adds the Content Key to handset without overwriting any existing Content Keys on handset

Backing Up to Memory Card

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Backup & Restore → Backup
- Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., Unsent msg., Notepad, Contents keys or Bookmarks
- 4 Confirmation appears, choose Yes
 - Tap Cancel to cancel backup.
 - If Content keys backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Choose Yes to overwrite the file.

- 1 Tap Menu → Settings →
 Backup & Restore → Restore
- Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., Unsent msg., Notepad, Contents keys or Bookmarks
 - 4 Select a file
 - To delete a backup file, tap Delete → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete → Yes.
- 5 Add or Overwrite
 - Tap Cancel to cancel restoration.

Advanced

₹ Settings

- Backup Memory (P.14-23)
- Restore Memory (P.14-23)

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up handset Phone Book entries on Server or synchronize handset Phone Book entries with SAB. Restore lost handset Phone Book entries from SAB.



Before Using S! Addressbook back-up

• SAB use requires a separate subscription.

Note

- Connections between handset and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Update) incur Packet Communication charges.
- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to take over SAB entries.
- After an application, when Network Information is retrieved*, Auto sync settings will be On automatically. After editing Phone Book, backup will start automatically.
- Even after Auto sync settings is set to Off, if Network Information is retrieved Auto Sync will be initialized and set to On.
- Confirm Auto sync settings is set to Off after canceling the services.
- * Auto sync settings Sync mode will be set to Synchronize. Auto Sync starts about ten minutes after editing of Phone Book has begun.

Precautions for Synchronizing

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

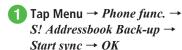
Sync Mode	Description
Synchronize	Backs up handset entries and updates SAB. ¹
Sync from Client	Backs up updated handset entries. ²
Sync from Server	Downloads updated SAB entries to handset. ³
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads handset entries. ⁴
Restore	Deletes all handset entries and downloads SAB entries to handset (up to 940SC limit) last edited first. ⁵

- 1 If handset Phone Book entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
- **2** Phone Book update information on Server is not applied to the one on handset.
- **3** Phone Book update information of handset is not applied to the one on Server.
- **4** Be careful that all Phone Book entries on Server are deleted
- **5** Be careful that all Phone Book entries of handset are deleted.
- Synchronizing in Synchronize mode is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last sync was not completed correctly by canceling, etc.

- These items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from handset:
 - Picture
 - Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call, Video Call, Message, or S! Friend's Status)
 - Blood type
- Select backup/restore timing and sync mode carefully to avoid accidental deletion of entries.
 - Delete all handset entries then select Synchronize, Sync from Client, or Backup to delete all SAB entries.
 - Delete all SAB entries then select Synchronize, Sync from Server, or Restore to delete all handset entries.
- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.
- When SAB service is canceled, Phone Book entries on Server are deleted

Synchronizing Phone Book Entries

Connect to SAB to sync SAB entries with handset Phone Book entries.



- Synchronize in Synchronize mode.
- If synchronize in Sync from Client/Backup/ Sync from Server/Restore mode, Tap Menu → Phone func. → S! Addressbook Back-up → Details → Backup/Restore → Select an item.

Note

 Starting sync connect to network. Packet Communication charges apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected when the synchronization.

Setting Auto Sync

If *Auto sync settings* is set to *On*, Setting Set frequency and Sync mode are required.

- 1 Tap Menu → Phone func. → S! Addressbook Back-up → Details → Auto sync settings
 - Alternatively, Tap Menu → Entertainment
 → S! Addressbook Back-up → Details.
- 2 Under On/Off, On
- $3 Set frequency \rightarrow Frequency$
- 4 Set items
 - To Back up Once a Month

 Every month → Tap Time → Enter time

 → Tap Date → Enter date
 - To Back up Once a Week

 Every week → Tap Time → Enter time

 → Tap Day → Select day
 - To Back up Ten Minutes after Editing Phone Book Entries After Editing Ph. Book
- Tap Save
- 6 Sync mode
- 7 SynchronizelSync from Clientl BackuplSync from ServerlRestore

• In ②, set *On/Off* to *Off* to cancel Auto sync settings.

Advanced

• Advanced Settings P.13-15

Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

Advanced Settings

***.** Advanced Settings Bluetooth[®] Settings

Acquiring Connected Device Files

Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Tap registered device indicator → Browse device → Approve access on source device

To Acquire a File
Select save location → Select a file to get

To Acquire Multiple Files
Select save location → Tap Get → File →
Check a file to get → Tap Get

To Acquire a Folder

Select save location → Tap Get → Folder →

Select a folder to get

Deleting File on Connected Device

Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Tap registered device indicator → Browse device → Approve access on source device → Select a folder → Tap Delete → Check a folder to delete → Tap Delete

Viewing Paired Device Details

Tap Menu → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth

→ Tap a device indicator to view → Device details

Editing Name of Paired Device

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Connectivity* \rightarrow *Bluetooth* \rightarrow Tap a device indicator to edit \rightarrow *Rename* \rightarrow Edit device name

Authorizing Paired Device

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → Tap a device indicator to authorize → *Authorize device* or *Unauthorize device*

• When *Authorize device* is set, the setting turns to *Unauthorized device*.

Deleting Connected Device

Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Bluetooth \rightarrow Tap a device indicator to delete \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes

Searching Devices by Type

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Settings* \rightarrow *Connectivity* \rightarrow *Bluetooth* \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow *Search settings* \rightarrow Select an item

• When selecting Device address, enter an address.

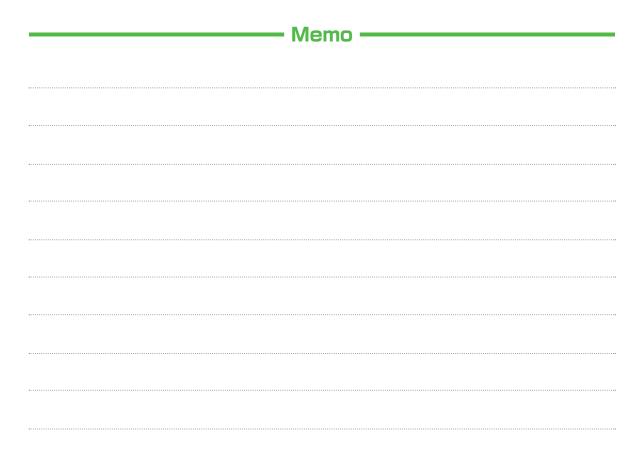
S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History

Tap Menu \rightarrow *Phone func.* \rightarrow *S! Addressbook Back-up* \rightarrow *Details* \rightarrow *Sync log* \rightarrow Select a log

Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

Tap Menu o Phone func. o S! Addressbook Back-up o Details o Sync log o Tap Delete o Check logs to delete o Tap Delete o Yes



Handset Customization

Phone Settings	14-2
Handset Settings	14-2
Touch Panel Settings	14-3
Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings Sounds & Vibration External Light Settings	14-3
Display & Font Settings	
Manner Mode Settings	
3	
Call Settings	14-5
Phone Book Settings	14-9
Messaging Settings	14-10
Custom Mail Address	
S! Mail & SMS	
S! Mail	14-12
SMS	14-13
Internet Settings	14-13
Yahoo! Keitai	
PC Site Browser	14-14
Digital TV Settings	14-15
TV Alarm	
Data Broadcast	14-16
Display & Sound	
Recording	14-17
Incoming Calls & Alarms	
Auto Power Off	14-17
Camera Settings	14-17
Camera & Video	
Photo	14-18
Video	14-19



19 19 19 20 20
19 19 20
19 20
-20
21
21
21
22
23
24
24
25
25
25
25



Phone Settings

Handset Settings Start He	Tell Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Phone settings
Change User Interface Language	言語選択 → Select an item
Set Time Zone Updating Default Ask when update	Date & Time \rightarrow Set time zone \rightarrow Time zone updating \rightarrow Select an item
Set Time	Date & Time → Set date & time → Time → Enter time → Tap OK • Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set Date	Date & Time → Set date & time → Date → Enter date → Tap OK • Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Home Zone Time Default GMT+09:00	Date & Time → Set time zone → Home zone → Scroll a window and tap a target city Tap Save Alternatively, tap the tab located at the top of the window to change the zone. Select the zone closest to your locality. Complete this setting before selecting Dual Clock in Widget setting.
Activate/Cancel Daylight Savings Time Default	Date & Time → Set time zone → Home zone → Scroll a window and tap a target city → ➡ → Tap Save • Tap ➡ to switch to ➡.
Change Date Format Default YYYY/MM/DD	$Date \& Time \rightarrow Set format \rightarrow Date format \rightarrow Select an item$
Change Time Format Default 24 hour	Date & Time → Set format → Time format → Select an item
Set Time Correction Default On	Date & Time → Set date & time → Time correction → Under Auto correction, On or Off • To specify when to correct the time, tap Correction timing → Check an item to set → Tap Save. • Tapping Manual correction → Yes immediately corrects the time.
Set Function to Activate with Built-in Stand Default Empty	Auto activation settings → Select item
Set Earphone Settings Default Earphone	Earphone settings → Select item
Save Entries to User's Dictionary	$User's \ dictionary ightharpoonup Tap \ Add \ new ightharpoonup Word ightharpoonup Enter \ reading ightharpoonup Tap \ Save$
Edit User's Dictionary Entries	User's dictionary → Select entry to edit → Edit word and reading → Tap Save
Delete User's Dictionary Entries	$User's \ dictionary \rightarrow Tap \ Delete \rightarrow Check \ word \ to \ delete \rightarrow Tap \ Delete \rightarrow \mathit{Yes}$

Touch Panel Settings Start Her	Tell Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Touch panel
Set Lock Key Default Lock	Lock key → Lock / Screen off
Set Auto Lock Default On	Under Auto lock, On or Off
Set Touch Panel Tone Volume Level & Vibration Level for Operating Touch Panel Default Volume: Level 0, Touch vibration: Level 3	Operation feedback → Adjust volume/Set strength of Vibration
Calibrate Touch Panel	Touch calibration → Tap Start → Follow onscreen instructions to sequentially tap the + signs • Tap Cancel to exit.

₹ Settings

Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings

Sounds & Vibration Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow <i>Sound settings</i>
Adjust Volume Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/Missed call notif./Delivery report/System sounds: Level 3, S! Quick News: Level 0	 Volume → Adjust volume If Ringtone reducer is On (�P.14-9), Ringtone volume is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, regardless of Ringtone volume set for Voice/Video Call. Use
Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call Default Voice call: Young hopefuls, Video call: Samsung Tune	Ringtone → Voice call, or Video call → Select save location for a file → Select a file • Tap ▶ to playback.
Set Ringtone to Something Other than Voice Call Default A Toy Box	Ringtone → Tap a Ringtone field to set → Select save location for a file → Select a file • Tap ▶ to playback.
Set Ringtone Duration to Something Other than Voice Call Default 5 Seconds	$Ringtone \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow Enter duration$
Set Vibration Default Off	Vibration → Select an item → Select a pattern • Tap ▶ to view a pattern.
Set System Sounds Default Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call: On, Minute minder/Call connect tone/Power On/Power Off: Off	System sounds → Check an item to check → Tap Save • Available items vary by mode.
• Open <i>Sound settings</i> to change sounds for Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for other modes.	

External Light Settings Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Sound settings
Set External Light Color for Incoming Transmissions Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/Missed call notif./Alarm/Delivery report: Green, S! Quick News: Off	 Incoming light → Select an item → Select a Color When selecting Off, Notification light does not blink. Tap to blink a light.
Set External Light Color for Missed Calls Default Missed call/Missed call notif.: Blue, Message/Delivery report: Green, S! Friend's Status: Light blue, Answering machine: White, Missed alarm: Pink	Notification light → Select an item → Select a color • When selecting Off, Notification light does not blink. • Tap • to view color.

4 Settings

Display & Font Settings	Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Display settings
Change Main Menu Settings	Default Standard	Main menu style → Select an item → Select a style → Tap Select
Set the Color Theme of Menu	Default Orange	Color theme → Select an item
Change Wallpaper Default Tokyo night view.jpg, Salty Dog. Clownfish.jpg	jpg, The Light of Shrine.jpg,	Wallpaper → (�P.2-6 Wallpaper ②)
Set Wallpaper for Lock Screen	Default Tokyo night view.jpg	$Lock\ screen o ext{Select file} o ext{Tap Set}$
Set Font Type	Default Font 1	Font type → Select an item
Change Message Text Font Size	Default Standard	Font size → Messages → Select an item
Set Text Size in Yahoo! Keitai Pages	Default Standard	Font size → Yahoo! Keitai → Select an item
Set Text Size in PC Site Browser	Default Standard	Font size → PC site browser → Select an item
Adjust Display Brightness	Default Auto	Backlight → Backlight on → Brightness → Under Auto/Manual, Auto or Manual • When Manual is selected, adjust brightness on Level field.
Set Backlight Time	Default 15 seconds	Backlight → Backlight on → Duration → Select an item • When Backlight time is set to Off, Display becomes dim. • Display becomes dimmer when Backlight time elapses.
Set Dimmer Time of Backlight	Default 15 seconds	Backlight → Backlight dim duration → Select an item • When Backlight time elapses, Display turns off.
Set Operator Name	Default Off	Under Operator name, On or Off



Manner Mode Settings

Switch Manner Mode Tap Menu → Settings → Manner mode settings → Select an item • To edit each settings in Manner mode, tap Edit → Select a mode → Set each item.		
	Switch Manner Mode	'

Call Settings Start He	Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Call settings
Forward All Calls to Voicemail (Handset Does Not Ring)	Optional services → Voice mail/Call forwarding → Voice mail On → Always (0 sec.)
Forward Unanswered Calls to Voicemail (Specify Ring Time)	Optional services → Voice mail/Call forwarding → Voice mail On → No reply (5 - 30 sec.)
Activate & Set Forwarding	Optional services → Voice mail/Call forwarding → Call forwarding On → Select a call type → Select a setting → Select an item → Set number to forward
Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding	Optional services \rightarrow Voice mail/Call forwarding \rightarrow Deactivate all \rightarrow Yes
Confirm Current Voicemail/Call Forwarding Settings	Optional services → Voice mail/Call forwarding → Get status
Listen to Voicemail Message	Optional services → Voice mail/Call forwarding → Listen to voice mail → □ or tap Call
Activate/Cancel Call Waiting	Optional services → Call waiting → On or Off
Confirm Current Call Waiting Settings	Optional services → Call waiting → Get status
Set Outgoing Call Barring	Optional services → Call barring → Outgoing call → Select an item \rightarrow On or Off → Enter Network Password → Tap OK
Activate/Cancel Incoming Call Barring	Optional services → Call barring → Incoming call → Select an item → On or Off → Enter Network Password → Tap OK
Cancel All Call Barring	$\begin{array}{c} \textit{Optional services} \rightarrow \textit{Call barring} \rightarrow \textit{Cancel all barring} \rightarrow \text{Enter Network Password} \rightarrow \\ \text{Tap OK} \rightarrow \textit{Yes} \end{array}$
Confirm Current Call Barring Settings	Optional services → Call barring → Get status → Select an item
Change Network Password	Optional services → Call barring → Set security code → Enter current Network Password → Tap OK → Enter new Network Password → Tap OK → Enter new Network Password again → Tap OK

Set Missed Call Notification	<i>Optional services</i> \rightarrow <i>Missed call notif.</i> \rightarrow \bigcirc or tap Call
Switch Network Mode Default Automatic	 Optional services → International call → Select network → Select an item If Manual is set, select from 3G/GSM, 3G, or GSM.
Save International Code Default 0046010	$Optional\ services othermal International\ call$ → International $code$ → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Enter an international code
Add/Change/Delete Country Number Default 日本 (Japan), 韓国 (KOR), イギリス (GBR), イタリア (ITA), スイス (CHE), スペイン (ESP), ドイツ (DEU), ポルトガル (PRT), オランダ (NLD), フランス (FRA), モナコ (MCO), アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	Optional services → International call → Country number → Add, change, or delete item To add, tap Add → Country name → Enter country name → Country code → Enter country code → Tap Save. To change, select an item from country code → Country name → Enter country name → Country code → Enter country code → Tap Save. To delete, tap Delete → Select item → Tap Delete → Yes.
Select Network to Access Default Automatic	Optional services → International call → Select operator → Select Auto/Manual → Select an item • When you set Manual, select a network.
Select Preferred Network from List	$\begin{array}{l} \textit{Optional services} \rightarrow \textit{International call} \rightarrow \textit{Select operator} \rightarrow \textit{Set priority} \rightarrow \texttt{Tap Add} \\ \rightarrow \textit{Network list} \rightarrow \texttt{Select a Network} \end{array}$
Add a New Preferred Network	Optional services \rightarrow International call \rightarrow Select operator \rightarrow Set priority \rightarrow Tap Add \rightarrow New Network \rightarrow Country code \rightarrow Enter country code \rightarrow Network code \rightarrow Enter Network code \rightarrow Network name \rightarrow Enter Network name \rightarrow Network type \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Tap Add
Set Roaming Dial Assistant Default On	 Optional services → International call → Under Roaming dial assistant, On or Off If Roaming dial assistant is set to On, popup appear while dialing. If you add international number before phone number, popup does not appear.
Check Call Time/Cost	Call time & cost → All calls • To reset call time/cost, tap Reset → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK.
Check Last Call Time/Cost	Call time & cost → Last call • To reset last call time/cost, tap Reset.
Check Data Counter	Call time & cost → Data counter • To reset sent/received data counter, tap Reset.
Show/Hide Call Time/Cost after Calls Default Off	Call time & cost → Under Show charge after call, On or Off • This function may not be available.

Change Call Cost Currency	Call time & $cost$ → Set $currency$ → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK → Tap Price field → Enter rate to the yen → Tap Currency field → Enter currency unit → Tap Save
Set Call Cost Limit	Call time & cost → Set max cost limit → Edit → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK → Tap New upper limit field → Enter upper limit → Tap Save After reaching the Call Cost Limit, only emergency calls can be placed; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled. When Show charge after call is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit	Call time & $cost \rightarrow Set\ max\ cost\ limit \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow Enter\ PIN2 \rightarrow Tap\ OK$
Activate/Cancel Answering Machine Default Off	Answering machine → Under On/Off, On or Off
Set Answering Machine Response Time Default 18seconds	Answering machine → Ringing duration → Select an item • If Other is selected, enter time.
Play Answering Machine Records	Answering machine → Play answering machine → Select a record • To delete record, in list, tap Delete → Check a record to delete → Tap Delete → Yes. •
Set Answering Machine Response Language	Answering machine → Sound language → Select an item • Tap to play message.
Set Preset Picture to Appear in Place of Your Own Image	$Video\ call ightharpoonup Alternative\ picture ightharpoonup Preset\ picture ightharpoonup Tap\ OK$
Set Alternative Picture to Appear in Place of My Image	Video call → Alternative picture → Pictures → Select a file → Tap OK • When Memory Card is inserted, Digital camera is selectable.
Adjust Incoming Video Quality Default Standard	Video call → Incoming video quality → Select an item
Adjust Outgoing Video Quality Default Standard	$Video\ call ightharpoonup Outgoing\ video\ quality ightharpoonup Select\ an\ item$
Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold	$Video\ call ightarrow Hold\ setting ightarrow Hold\ during\ call ightarrow Preset\ picture ightarrow Tap\ OK$
Set Hold Setting	 Video call → Hold setting → Hold during call → Pictures → Select a file → Tap OK When Memory Card is inserted, Digital camera is selectable.
Set Preset Picture to Appear When Video Call is on Hold without Answering	$Video\ call ightarrow Hold\ setting ightarrow Hold\ answer ightarrow Preset\ picture ightarrow Tap\ OK$
Set Hold Answer Setting	 Video call → Hold setting → Hold answer → Pictures → Select a file → Tap OK When Memory Card is inserted, Digital camera is selectable.
Activate/Cancel Mute for Video Call Default Off	Video call → Under Mute my voice, On or Off • If On, tap Unmute to temporarily send voice.

Activate/Cancel Speakerphone during Video Call Default	On Video call - Under Speaker On or Off
Activate/Cancer Speakerphone during video Can Default	
Set Backlight Default	On Video call → Under Backlight, On or Off
	• When <i>Off</i> is set, Display becomes dim.
Set Handset Response When Video Call Cannot Be Connected	Video call → Retry with → Select an item
Default Ask each t	• None: Calls are disconnected with no notification.
	When a Video Call cannot be connected, prompt appears to retry with the selected setting.
A MILE CHE CHE IN THE COMME	Video call \rightarrow Auto answer \rightarrow Under On/Off, On or Off
Answer Video Call from Specified Party Automatically Default	 When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.
	$Video\ call$ → $Auto\ answer$ → $Auto\ answer\ list$ → Tap Add → Select an item → Enter
Create Auto Answer List	Phone Password → Tap OK → Add an entry
Create Auto Aliswei List	 To delete the specified party, after selecting Auto answer list, tap Delete → Check an
	entry to delete \rightarrow Tap Delete \rightarrow Yes.
Show/Hide Your Own Image for Video Calls Default	On $Video\ call \rightarrow Under\ Show\ my\ image,\ On\ or\ Off$
	Reject incoming calls \rightarrow Set reject number \rightarrow Under On/Off, On or Off
Accept/Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers Default	
	Missed call appears in Standby. Select the message to check missed call.
	Reject incoming calls \rightarrow Set reject number \rightarrow Black list \rightarrow Tap Add \rightarrow Select an item
Create/Edit Black List	→ Add an entry
	 To delete saved phone numbers, select Black list → Tap Delete → Check phone numbers to delete → Tap Delete → Yes.
A UD CONTROL IN INC.	•
Accept/Reject Calls from Unknown Numbers Default	
Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Withheld Default	Off Reject incoming calls → Under Withheld, On or Off
Accept/Reject Calls from Payphones Default	Off Reject incoming calls \rightarrow Under Payphone, On or Off
Accept/Reject Calls When Number is Unavailable Default	Off Reject incoming calls → Under Unavailable, On or Off
Activate/Cancel Offline Mode Default	Off Under Offline mode, On or Off
Show/Hide Your Own Number	Show my number → On or Off
Showning rour Own Number	To check current status, select <i>Get status</i> .

I
la
$\overline{}$
=
=
20
Ü.
-
\circ
S
-
0
=
≅.
Ν
а
\rightarrow
≅.
\simeq
_

Set Handset to Automatically Redial Busy Numbers	Default Off	Under <i>Auto redial</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • <i>On</i> : Handset automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial repeats up to ten times until <i>Cancel</i> is tapped or ∠ so is pressed. • Auto redial setting takes priority when Video Call retry setting is selected. • If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voicemail, call is forwarded accordingly.
Activate/Cancel Automatic Ringer Reduction	Default On	Under <i>Ringtone reducer</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • When Ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable/Disable Calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone	Default Off	Earphone call → Call number → Select an item → Add a phone number → Under On/ Off, On or Off On: Press Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) switch for 1 + seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, saving the new number.
Set Clear Talk	Default Off	Clear talk → Select item
Set High-tone Setting	Default Off	High-tone setting → Select item
Adjust Earpiece Volume	efault Level 5	Adjust volume in Hearing volume field

Phone Book Settings Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Phone func.</i> \rightarrow <i>Settings</i>
Select Phone Book Save Location Default Phone	Save to → Select an item • Ask each time: A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.
Change Phone Book Preference (Phone/USIM) Default Phone	Change view → Select an item
Change Search Method Default ABC	Search method → Select an item
Copy All Phone Book Records & Save on Handset & USIM Card	Copy all→Phone to USIM/USIM to Phone→Yes

Messaging Settings

Custom Mail Address

Customize/Change Handset Mail Address	Tap Messaging → Settings → Custom mail address → Follow onscreen instructions • Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Default: Account name consists of random alphanumerics
---------------------------------------	---

S! Mail & SMS	Tell Tap Messaging \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Universal settings
Request/Cancel Delivery Report Default Off	Sending settings → Under Delivery report, On or Off • On: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Quote Text From Received Message	Sending settings → Reply with history → Select an item
Select Reply Setting Default Off	Sending settings → Under Reply setting, On or Off On: Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to "Reply to" address Off: Replies to sent messages are addressed to handset number/mail address • Set address that appears in To: field of replies to messages sent from handset.
Set "Reply to" Address	Sending settings → "Reply to" address \rightarrow Enter an item \rightarrow Enter address
Change Quick Reply Message	Sending settings \rightarrow Quick reply setting \rightarrow Select items \rightarrow Enter message
Show/Hide Transmission Progress Bar Default On	Sending settings → Under Sending progress setting, On or Off
Set Received Message Notice Content/Hide Notice Default From	Receiving settings → Message notice → View setting → Select an item • Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select Secret Folder Message Notice Setting Default Show	Receiving settings → Message notice → Secret folder → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Secret folder → Select an item Not show: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or Message notice does not appear.
Adjust 3D Pictograms Auto Play Setting	Receiving settings → 3D Pictograms → 3D Picto. Auto play → Select an item Always: Show 3D Pictogram for all messages Only unread: Show 3D Pictograms for unread messages only Disable: Hide 3D Pictograms • The first time a received message is viewed 3D Picto. Auto play confirmation appears.

Select 3D Pictograms Color Settings Default Random	Receiving settings \rightarrow 3D Pictograms \rightarrow Color settings \rightarrow or \triangleright to show target
Select 35 Fictograms color Settings	pattern → Tap OK
Select 3D Pictograms Display Speed Default Normal	Receiving settings \rightarrow 3D Pictograms \rightarrow Display speed \rightarrow Select an item
Link External Light to Incoming Feeling Mail Default On	Receiving settings \rightarrow Link to feeling \rightarrow Light color \rightarrow Under On/Off, On or Off
Link External Light Color to Incoming Feeling Mail	Receiving settings \rightarrow Link to feeling \rightarrow Light color \rightarrow Light color \rightarrow Select a feeling
Default Happy/Glad: Pink, OK/Good: Green, Sad/Sorry: Blue,	→ Select a color
NG/Bad: Red, Important/Notice: Yellow	Tap to view color.
Link Vibration to Incoming Feeling Mail Default On	Receiving settings \rightarrow Link to feeling \rightarrow Vibration pattern \rightarrow Select an item
Set Whether to Sound Handset When Feeling Mail Arrives	Receiving settings \rightarrow Link to feeling \rightarrow Ringtone \rightarrow Under On/Off, On or Off
Link Ringtone to Incoming Feeling Mail	Receiving settings \rightarrow Link to feeling \rightarrow Ringtone \rightarrow Assign tone \rightarrow Select a feeling
Default Happy/Glad: One Fine Day.mp4, OK/Good: Sunny day.mp4,	→ Select a save location → Select a Ringtone
Sad/Sorry: Jazzy House_Pleasure.mp4, NG/Bad: Vintage Cinema.mp4,	Tap to playback the file.
Important/Notice: On my way home.mp4	
Set Feeling Mail Ringtone Duration Default 5 Seconds	Receiving settings \rightarrow Link to feeling \rightarrow Ringtone \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow Enter time \rightarrow Tap OK
Change Font Size Default Standard	Display settings → Font size → Select an item
Change Scroll Unit Default Single line	Display settings → Scroll unit → Select an item
Show/Hide Navigation Bar Default On	Display settings → Under Navigation bar, On or Off
Change Received Message View Default Folder view	Display settings → Received msg. view \rightarrow Select an item
Change Sent Message View Default Folder view	Display settings → Sent msg. view → Select an item
	Auto delete \rightarrow Received msg. \rightarrow Select an item
	On (Except protected): Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room
Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Received Messages When Received Memory	for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i> , memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
is Full Default On (Except protected)	On (Only read): Unprotected messages are automatically deleted from the oldest one to make room
	for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i> , memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
	Off: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
	Auto delete → Sent msg. → Select an item
Set/Cancel Auto Delete for Sent Messages When Sent Memory is Full Default On (Except protected)	On (Except protected): Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to
	make room for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i> , memory full confirmation appears. Delete
	messages and retry.
	Off: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

Sort Unregistered Mobile Address as Spam Default Off	$Anti-spam\ measures ightarrow $ Enter Phone Password $ ightarrow$ Tap OK $ ightarrow$ $Unregistered ightarrow$ On
Sort Message with Spam Filter Default Off	 Anti-spam measures → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Spam filter → On To specify list, Permitted list → Tap Edit → (If address already exists in the list, tap Add filter) → Sender/Sender(Partial match)/Subject.
Add Address to Permitted List Default Off	 Anti-spam measures → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Permitted list → On To specify list, Spam filter → Tap Edit → (If address already exists in the list, tap Add filter) → Sender/Sender(Partial match)/Subject. Available only when Unregistered/Spam filter is On.
Set Address for Report Spam	$Anti$ -spam measures \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow $Address$ for report spam
Default stop@meiwaku.softbankmobile.co.jp	→ Enter mail address

S! Mail Start Her	Tap Messaging \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow <i>S! Mail settings</i>
Set Max Creation Size Default 1MB	Sending options → Max creation size → Select an item In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → Sending options → Max creation size can change maximum size temporarily.
Set Message Sending Priority Default Normal	Sending options → Priority → Select an item
Set S! Mail Receiving Options Default Auto DL (All)	Receiving options → Home auto settings → Select an item Auto DL (All): Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically. Auto DL(Specified): Tap Edit to set Registered address/Specified address. Registered address is set to On send message using number in Phone Book is received. Specified address is set to On, tap Edit → Select address to set message to receive. Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message.
Set S! Mail Receiving Options during Roaming Default Auto DL (All)	Receiving options → Roaming auto settings → Select an item Auto DL (All): Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically. Auto DL(Specified): Tap Edit to set Registered address/Specified address. Registered address is set to On send message using number in Phone Book is received. Specified address is set to On, tap Edit → Select address to set message to receive. Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message. • When you set Auto DL (All), an entire message including any attachments will be automatically downloaded, resulting in high Packet Communication charges for your messaging overseas.

Set Max Receiving Size Default 1MB	Receiving options → Max receiving size → Select an item
Insert/Hide Signature Default Off	Signature → Auto insert → Select an item
Edit Signature	Signature → Signature texts → Enter a signature
Set Attached Image Appearance Default Double-sized	Picture appearance → Select an item
Set Attached Image Auto Playback Default On	Auto play file → Under Picture, On or Off
Set Attached Sound Auto Playback Default Off	Auto play file → Under Sound, On or Off

SMS	Her	Tap Messaging \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow <i>SMS settings</i>
Set Mail Service Center Message Expiry Time Default No.	ne	Expiry time → Select an item • Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.
Set Message Center Number Default Setting 1 +8190665193	00	Message center → Select an item
Change Character Code Default Unico	ode	Char-code → Select an item

Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai Start Ho	Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow <i>Browser settings</i>
Show/hide Navigation Bar in a Page Default Or	Under Navigation bar, On or Off
Change Page Font Size Default Standard	Font size → Select an item
Set Page Scroll Unit Default Single line	Scroll unit → Select an item
Show/Hide Page Images Default Or	Downloads → Under Display image, On or Off • Set Off to help reduce download time.
Play/Mute Page Sounds Default Or	Downloads → Under Play sounds, On or Off • Set Off to help reduce download time.
Set Save Location for Images in a Page, etc Default Phone	Save to → Phone/Memory card/Ask each time To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.

Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates	Memory manager → Select an item → Yes
Show/Hide Manufacture Number Default On	Security → Under Manufacture number, On or Off • On: Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send/Hide Referrer Default Send	Security → Send referer → Select an item • Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.
Select Cookie Setting Default Enabled	Security → Cookies → Select an item Select Confirm for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved. Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.
Select Script Setting Default On	Security o Script o Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate	Security → Root certificates → Select a certificate • View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.
Set Certificate Retention Period Default Per browsing	Security → Certificate retention → Select an item
Show/Hide Secure Prompt Default On	Security → Under Secure prompt, On or Off
Initialize Browser	 Initialized browser → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.
Reset Settings	Reset settings \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

PC Site Browser	Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow Tap Yahoo! \rightarrow <i>PC site browser</i> \rightarrow <i>PC site browser settings</i>
Change Page Font Size De	fault Standard	Font size → Select an item
Show/Hide Page Navigation When Zooming	Default On	Under Page navigation, On or Off
Show/Hide Page Images Default ()	Default On	Downloads → Under Display image, On or Off
Showringer age images	Deldait Off	Set <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Play/Mute Page Sounds Default	Default On	$Downloads \rightarrow Under Play sounds, On or Off$
	Delault Off	Set <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Set Save Location for Images in a Page, etc	Default Phone	Save to → Phone/Memory card/Ask each time
Set Save Location for images in a Page, etc	Delault [4][0][6	To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.
		<i>Memory manager</i> → Select an item → <i>Yes</i>
Delete Cache/Cookie/Certificates/RSS Feed List		 To delete RSS Feed list, select Delete RSS feed list → Enter Phone Password → Tap
		$OK \rightarrow Yes$.

Show/Hide Manufacture Number Default On	Security → Under Manufacture number, On or Off • On: Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send/Hide Referrer Default Send	Security → Send referer → Select an item • Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.
Select Cookie Setting Default Enabled	Security → Cookies → Select an item Select Confirm to show acceptance confirmation every time before Cookie is saved. Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.
Select Script Setting Default On	Security o Script o Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate	Security → Root certificates → Select a certificate • View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.
Set Certificate Retention Period Default Per browsing	Security → Certificate retention → Select an item
Show/Hide Secure Prompt Default On	Security \rightarrow Under Secure prompt, On or Off
Show/Hide Warning Default On	Under <i>Warning messages, On</i> or <i>Off</i> ■ Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser	 Initialized browser → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.
Reset Settings	Reset settings \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Yes

্ৰ Settings Digital TV Settings

TV Alarm	art Here Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow TV \ alarm$
Set Alarm Defa	On Under Alarm, On or Off
Set Alert Tone Default Samsun	Ing Tune Alert tone → Select a save location → Select a file • Tap to playback.
Set Volume Default	Level 3 Adjust Volume on Volume field
Set Vibration Defa	Off Vibration → Select an item • Tap ▶ to view a pattern.

Set Notification Light Default On	Under Light, On or Off
Set Reminder Time Default 1 minute before	Reminder time → Select an item
Set Alarm Duration Default 10 seconds	Duration → Select an item
Set Alarm Sound/Vibration in Manner Mode	Manner mode setting → Under Alarm sound/Vibration, On or Off
Default Alarm sound:Off, Vibration:On	

Data Broadcast Start	Here Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Set\ broadcast\ data$
Set Recording Type Default Image+	ext Set recording → Select an item
Select Save Location Default Ph	one Image location → Select an item
Select Connection Notification Type Default Ask each t	me Notify connection → Select an item
Show/Hide Manufacture Number Default	On Under Manufacture number, On or Off
Delete Station Data	 Delete station data → m → Yes To delete all stations, tap Delete all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes.

Display & Sound Start He	re Tap Menu → $TV \rightarrow Settings$
Show/Hide Indicators in Landscape View Default On	Display → Under Display pict, On or Off
Set Whether to Show 4:3 Videos in Landscape View Default Normal	Display → Landscape style → Select an item
Set Whether to Show 4:3 Videos in Portrait View Default Normal	Display → Portrait style → Select an item
Adjust Display Brightness Default Level 3	 Display → Adjust brightness on Setting field This setting is only effective when the Backlight brightness is set to Manual.
Adjust Sound Quality Default Off	Sound → Sound mode → Select an item
Select Language Default Main	Sound o Sound language o Select an item
Set Smart Volume Control Default On	Sound → Under Smart volume control, On/Off
Select Output Device Default Phone/Earphone	Sound → Sound output → Select an item

Set Save Location Default Memory card Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Save \ recording \ to \rightarrow Select$ an item

Incoming Calls & Alarms

Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms

Default Voice call/Video call: Call priority, Alarms: Alarm priority

Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Calls & Alarms \rightarrow Select an item <math>\rightarrow$ Select action

- When Call priority or Alarm priority is set, TV window pauses temporarily and Incoming call window or Alarm window appears.
- When Notice a call or Alarm notice is set, a notification appears at top of Display and handset vibrates (TV reception continues). Press \(\sigma \) to accept a call; press \(\sigma \) to hold a call.

Auto Power Off

End TV after Setting Duration Default Off Tap Menu $\rightarrow TV \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Auto\ power\ off \rightarrow$ Select an item

3 Settings

Camera Settings

Camera & Video	Start Here \circ (2 + seconds) \rightarrow (1 \rightarrow)	
Set Anti-Shake	Default Off	Under <i>Anti-shake, On</i> or <i>Off</i> ■ Anti-Shake is not available when Wide Dynamic Range is set to <i>On</i> .
Set Contrast	Default ()	Contrast → Select an item
Set Saturation	Default ()	Saturation → Select an item
Set Sharpness	Default ()	Sharpness → Select an item

Photo Start Her	re
Add/Eliminate Location Info	Under <i>Add location info, On</i> or <i>Off</i> ■ Add captured location information to image.
Select Quality Default Fine	Quality → Select an item
Set ISO Default Auto	ISO → Select an item
Set Exposure Metering Default Center-weight	Exposure metering → Select an item
Set Wide Dynamic Range Default Off	 Under Wide dynamic range, On or Off Setting this to On automatically adjusts your image captured in a backlit situation or environment where the brightness difference is extreme that would otherwise be too bright or too dark. Wide Dynamic Range is not available when Anti-Shake is set to On.
Activate/Cancel Auto Save Default On (Preview off)	 Auto save → On (Preview off)/On (2 sec)/On (Preview manual)/Off On (Preview off): Image is automatically saved. After saving, handset returns to Capture window without showing preview. On (2 sec): Image is automatically saved. After saving, preview appears for two seconds, and handset returns to Capture window. On (Preview manual): After capturing, tap Set as/Edit/Send/Rename to save automatically. Handset returns to Capture window. Off: Select save or cancel the image. To redo, press
Set Save Location When Memory Card is Inserted Default Phone	Save to → Select an item When image size is set to Mail, Digital camera is unselectable. This setting is active with Memory Card inserted. If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to Phone.
Show/Hide Guideline Default Off	Under Guideline, On or Off
Set Face Link Display Default Off	Under <i>Face link display, On</i> or <i>Off</i> ■ When you set this <i>On</i> , after the face you captured is recognized, the name linked to Face Link appears.
Set Shutter Sound Default Pattern1	Shutter sound → Select an item
Set Timer Sound Default Pattern1	Timer sound → Select an item

Video	rt Here \circ \bigcirc $(2 + seconds) \rightarrow \circ \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow Video \rightarrow \circ \bigcirc$
Select Quality Default	Fine Quality → Select an item
Activate/Cancel Auto Save	Under Auto save, On or Off
Set Save Location Default	Under <i>Save to, Phone</i> or <i>Memory card</i> ■ To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.
Show/Hide Guideline Defau	Under Guideline, On or Off
Set Shutter Sound Default Par	tern1 Shutter sound → Select an item
Set Timer Sound Default Part	tern1 Timer sound → Select an item

<u>র Settings</u> Media Player Settings

Music	Start Her	
Set Repeat Mode	Default A	Repeat mode → Select an item • Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in playlist randomly repeatedly.
Set Shuffle	Default Off	Under Shuffle, On or Off
Set Sound Effects	Default Off	Sound effects → Select an item → Tap OK Set Sound effects only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone.
Set Mood De	fault Normal	Under <i>Mood</i> , tap + / -

Movie	Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Media</i> \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow <i>Movie</i>
Set Repeat Mode	Default All	 Repeat mode → Select an item Play a single file repeatedly, all movies, or all files in playlist repeatedly.
Set Shuffle	Default Off	Under Shuffle, On or Off

Set Backlight Default Always O	Backlight → Select an item
Set Portrait Style Default 480*36	Portrait style → Select an item
Set Landscape Style Default Norma	Landscape style → Select an item
Show/Hide Movie Thumbnails Default O	Under <i>Thumbnail display</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Access/Ignore Linked Information Default 0	Under <i>Web link</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • <i>On</i> : After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.
Set Sound Effects Default 0	Sound effects → Select an item → Tap OK • Set Sound effects only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone.
Set Mood Default Norma	Under <i>Mood</i> , tap + / -

Entertainment Setting

Widgets	Start Her	Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Widget</i> \rightarrow <i>Settings</i>
Set Downloaded Widget Automatic Update	Default On	Under Auto refresh, On/Off
Set Roaming Automatic Connection	Default Off	Under Roaming auto connect, On/Off
Show/Hide Confirmation When Using Overseas	Default On	Under Roaming confirmation, On/Off
Accept/Reject Cookies	Default On	Under Cookies, On/Off
Deleting Cookies		Delete cookies → Yes

S! Information Channel

Start Here Tap Menu \rightarrow *Entertainment* \rightarrow *S! Information Channel/Weather*

→ Weather Indicator → Settings

Set Weather Indicator Update Notification	Default On	Under Weather notification, On or Off
Set Weather Indicator Automatic Update	Default On	Under Icon update, On or Off

S! Applications Start He	Tell Tap Menu \rightarrow S! Appli \rightarrow Settings
Set S! Appli Volume Default 3	Adjust volume on Volume field
Adjust Display Backlight Setting Default Normal settings	Backlight → Always On/Always Off/Normal settings • When Normal settings is set, settings of Backlight in Display settings is applied.
Set S! Appli Vibration Settings Default On	Under Vibration, On or Off
Set Operation of Incoming Call/Alarm/S! Appli Start Request Default Voice call/Video call: Call Priority, Alarms: Alarm priority, Start demand: Start notice	 Calls & Alarms → Select an item → Select action When Call Priority or Alarm priority or Start priority is set, S! Appli pauses temporarily and incoming call, Alarm or Start request window appears. When Notice a call, Alarm notice or Start notice is set, Call, Alarm or Start request Notification appears in the top of Display. Press to receive a call. Press to hold a call. Even when Notice a call is set, if Answering machine is On, S! Appli pauses and Answering machine activates after the response time.
Reset Settings of S! Appli	Set to default → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes

Osaifu-Keitai [®] Start He	Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Data Folder</i> \rightarrow <i>Lifestyle-Appli</i> \rightarrow Tap More \rightarrow <i>Permission</i>
Set Security to Lifestyle-Appli	Select an item → Select an item
S! GPS Navi	Tell Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Tools</i> \rightarrow <i>S! GPS Navi</i> \rightarrow <i>Navi settings</i>
Select Navi Appli to Activate	Select Navi appli → Select Navi appli
Register URL to View Map Default URL	$Map\ URL\ settings$ → $Map\ URL\ 1/Map\ URL\ 2$ → Enter URL → Tap OK
Activate Positioning Lock Default Off	Under <i>Positioning lock, On</i> \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK
Hide Confirmation When Sending Location Information Default Always ask	Send location info → Always ask/Send/Not send

Default Show

Notification setting → Show/Not show

Hide Information When Providing Location Information Automatically

₹ Settings

Security Settings	Start Hei	Tap Menu \rightarrow <i>Settings</i> \rightarrow <i>Security</i>
Activate/Cancel Phone Lock	Default Off	Under <i>Phone lock, On</i> or <i>Off</i> \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK
Activate/Cancel Password Lock	Default Off	$Password\ lock$ → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Change Phone Password	Default 9999	Change password → Enter current password → Tap OK → Enter new password → Tap OK → Enter new password again
Activate/Cancel Facial Recognition	Default Off	Facial recognition → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Under On/Off , On or Off → Tap OK
Save Facial Recognition User	Default Empty	Facial recognition → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → User registration → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → User 1 to User 5 → Select image 1 to image 5 → Tap Start → Tap Save
Show/Hide Guidance	Default Preview	$Facial\ recognition$ → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → $Guidance$ → Select an item
Set Security Level	Default Normal	$Facial\ recognition$ → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → $Security\ level$ → Select an item
Activate/Cancel Function Lock	Default Off	$Function\ lock$ → Check an item to lock → Tap Save → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Activate/Cancel Secret Mode	Default Hide	Secret mode → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item
Activate/Cancel USIM Lock	Default Off	Under $USIM\ lock,\ On\ $ or $Off\ \to$ Enter USIM password (four- to eight-digit) \to Tap OK \to Enter USIM password again as required \to Tap OK
Activate/Cancel PIN Certification	Default Off	Under PIN certification, On or $Off o$ Enter PIN $ o$ Tap OK
Change PIN		Change PIN → Enter current PIN → Tap OK → Enter new PIN → Tap OK → Enter new PIN again → Tap OK • To change PIN code, set PIN certification to On.
Change PIN2		Change PIN2 → Enter current PIN2 → Tap OK → Enter new PIN2 → Tap OK → Enter new PIN2 again → Tap OK
Set IP Service Setting	Default On	Under <i>IP service setting</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ■ Some functions are only available when you set IP service setting to <i>On</i> .
Delete Phone Book Entries, Messages, etc.		$All\ reset$ → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes
Restore Settings to Default Values		Reset settings → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes

Memory Settings

Start Here Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings

Check Memory Card Details	Memory settings → Memory card • Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.
Rename Memory Card	$Memory\ settings \rightarrow Memory\ card \rightarrow Name \rightarrow Enter\ name$
Format Memory Card	$Memory\ settings \rightarrow Memory\ card$ → Tap Format → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes
Confirm Total/Remaining Phone Memory	Memory settings → Phone memory • View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.
Clear Phone Memory	Memory settings → Phone memory → Tap Clear → Check an item to clear → Tap Clear → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Yes
Set Default Memory to Phone/Memory Card Default Phone	Memory settings → Set default memory → Select an item With Memory Card inserted, select Phone or Memory card. Available when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, receiving files via Bluetooth®, etc. Even when Ask each time is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to handset.
View Memory Status	Memory settings → Memory status → Select an item If Data Folder is selected, select Phone memory/Memory card. To delete viewed memory, tap Delete (�P.12-14 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).
Backup Memory	Backup & $Restore → Backup → Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Yes$
Restore Memory	Backup & Restore → Restore → Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Select a file → Add or Overwrite



Connectivity Settings

Bluetooth [®] Start He	Tell Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Bluetooth
Activate/Cancel Bluetooth® Functions	Tap On, Tap Off
Search for a New Bluetooth® Device	Tap Search → Device responds, drag it to □ → Enter Authorization Code (four- to 16-digit) → Tap OK → Enter same code on device within 30 seconds
Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepads, Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg. at Once	Tap Transfer all \rightarrow Drag device to connect to \square \rightarrow Enter Phone Password \rightarrow Tap OK \rightarrow Select an item
Edit Handset Name Default 940SC	Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Tap Bluetooth name \rightarrow Edit name
Confirm Handset Device Address	Tap More → Settings • Address appears on Bluetooth address field.
Search/Save from Bluetooth® Devices	Tap More → Settings → My phone's visibility → Select an item • To search and save from other Bluetooth® devices, make handset visible.
Set Default Output Device While Watching TV Default Phone/Earphone	Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Sound output setting \rightarrow Phone/Earphone/Bluetooth device
Set Secure Mode Default On	Tap More → Settings → Under Secure mode, On or Off • On: A confirmation appears before transfers.
Adjust Handsfree Setting Default Private mode	Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Handsfree \rightarrow Select an item Private mode: Use Microphone for handset calls or handsfree device for device calls. Handsfree mode: Talk via handsfree device.
Set Answering Mode Default Normal	Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Answering mode \rightarrow Select an item
Set Answer Time Default 4 seconds	Tap More → Settings → Answer time → Select an item • To set Answer time, select Automatic in Answering mode.
Activate/Cancel S! Appli Confirmation Default On	Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Under S! Appli request, On or Off
Confirm Available Bluetooth® Functions	Tap More \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Bluetooth services \rightarrow Select an item

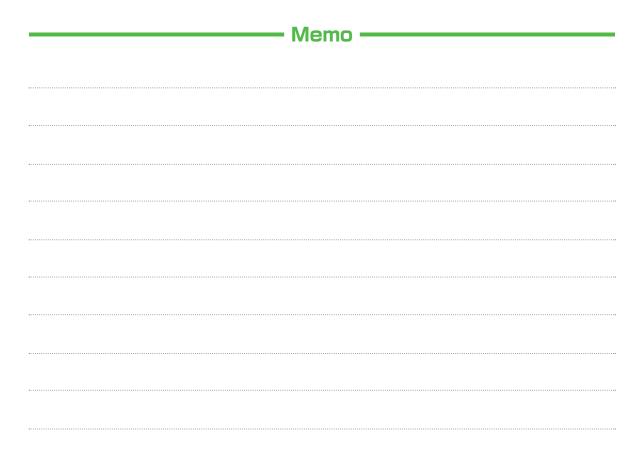
2	
	1

Infrared Start Her	Tell Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow Infrared
Activate/Cancel Infrared Transmission Default Off	Under On/Off, On or Off
Transfer Account Details	Transfer account details
Transfer Files	$Transfer\ files$ → Select Data Folder → Select files → $Send$
Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks at Once	Transfer all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Enter Authorization Code (four-digit) → Tap OK For Phonebook, choose Yes to transfer images.

IC Transmission Start H	Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity \rightarrow IC transmission
Activate/Cancel IC Transmission Default O	Under Receive setting, On or $Off \rightarrow Yes$
Transfer All Phone Book Entries, Calendar/Tasks, Bookmarks, Notepads Received msg., Drafts or Sent msg. at Once	Transfer all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select items → Enter Authorization Code (four- to 16-digit) → Tap OK For Phonebook, choose Yes to transfer images.

	USB Start Here Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Connectivity		
	Activate Mass Storage	$USB\ mode ightarrow Mass\ storage ightarrow Yes ightarrow$ Enter Phone Password ightarrow Tap OK ightarrow Exchange files with PC	
		You need to connect handset and your PC before this operation.	
Activate Synch Mode to PC		USB mode → MTP synch mode → Yes → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Exchange files with PC • You need to connect handset and your PC before this operation.	
	Enable/Disable USB Charger Default Enable		

Network Start He	Tap Menu \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow Network settings
Retrieve Network Information Manually	Retrieve NW info → Yes or No
Seek the Most Prioritized Network	Re-search signal → Yes or No



Appendix

Troubleshooting
Software Update
Function List 15-5 Tool Bar Menu 15-5 Main Menu 15-6
Text Entry Window Key Assignments 15-8 Text Entry Window Keys 15-8 Text Entry Keys 15-9
Symbols 15-11 Double-byte Symbols 15-11 Single-byte Symbols 15-11 Symbol Conversions 15-11
Pictograms
Memory
Specifications 15-13 SoftBank 940SC 15-13 Battery 15-14
Index
Objective Index 15-22
Advanced Settings Index 15-25
Warranty & Service 15-26 Warranty 15-26 Repair Requests 15-26
Customer Service



Troubleshooting

Handset does not turn on

- ✓ Is battery empty?
- → Replace or charge battery.
- ✓ Is battery installed in handset?
- → Install battery correctly.

When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ✓ Is PIN certification set to On?
- → If **PIN** certification is **On**, enter PIN.

When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- $|\nabla|$ |s *USIM lock* set to *On*?
- → If *USIM lock* is *On*, enter USIM password.

Please insert USIM card, Incorrect USIM or USIM card failed appears when handset is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
- Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
- ☑ Is USIM Card still being loaded?
- → Try again after a while.
- ✓ Is an incorrect USIM Card being used?
- → Check to see if correct USIM Card is being used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
- ✓ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
- → Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.

■ 圏外 or **①** appears and no calls can be placed

- ☑ Handset is out-of-range.
- → Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ☑ Does 圏外 or 💵 appear?
- → Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
- ✓ Is battery empty?
- → Replace or charge battery.

Unable to place a call

- ✓ Is Call Barring set?
- → Deactivate Call Barring.
- ☑ Is Offline mode set to On? (appears)
- → Set Offline mode to Off.

Unable to open Phone Book entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ✓ Is Function lock set?
- → Cancel Function lock.

Clicking noise is heard during a call

Noise may be generated when signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

Unable to charge battery

- Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into handset?
- → Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
- ✓ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
- → Insert AC Charger plug securely.
- Is battery installed in handset?
- → Install battery correctly.
- ☑ Are handset terminals and AC Charger clean?
- → Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
- ☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
- → Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- Battery may need to be replaced.
- → Install a new battery.
- Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
- → Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.
- Does handset or battery become very warm during charging?
- If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After handset and battery are cool, retry charging.

Devices become hot

- During charging, AC Charger may heat up.
- Handset may heat up during charging/long calls.
- → If handset is safe to touch, heat level is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (◆P.15-27).

Appendix

Battery drains quickly

- Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
- → Use handset in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (◆P.1-9).

Unable to watch TV

- ✓ Is USIM Card removed?
- → Unable to watch TV with no USIM Card inserted. Insert USIM Card.
- ✓ Is subscription terminated?
- → TV is enabled only during subscription period.

Display flickers

- ✓ Is handset used near fluorescent light?
- → Use handset as far away from fluorescent light as possible.

Display is dim or unlit

- This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.
- Unable to play music via speaker
 - ✓ Is Manner mode set?
 - → Cancel Manner mode.
 - ✓ Is the Stereo Earphone Microphone connected?
 - → Disconnect the connector for the Stereo Earphone Microphone (optional) from handset.
- Too many applications are already running. appears
 - Too many functions are active.
 - → Close some.

Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung New PC Studio

- ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
- → If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with USB cable, installing the driver is required. Download USB Driver Installer from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup /940download.html) and install the driver.
- Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
- → Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung New PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
- Are Bluetooth® or PC USB connection port and Samsung New PC Studio the same?
- Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung New PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.
- Phone Book entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear
 - ✓ In Security, is Secret mode set to Hide?
 - → In Security, set Secret mode to Show.
 - ✓ Is Secret under each function set to On?
 - → Select *Unlock temporarily* from More on the window to display information.

Sending message failed appears

- ✓ If send fails, error message and reason appear.
- → Confirm reason and try again.

Service not allowed appears

- ✓ Handset is outside the service area.
- Send from within the service area.

Sending operation cannot be operated in offline mode appears

- In Offline mode, handset transmissions are disabled
- → Set Offline mode to Off (◆P.1-15).
- Storage space short by * * bytes. Edit data folder files? appears
 - Handset memory is full.
 - → Delete unnecessary files and try again.
- Cannot download. File corrupt. appears
 ✓ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.
- Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) or Bluetooth®
 ☑ Is Earphone call set to Off?
 - → Even if Earphone call number is saved, if
 Earphone call is set to Off it will not be
 dialed. Set Earphone call to On (♠P.14-9).

SoftBank releases firmware updates. Download as required. Choose *Update* or *Schedule update*.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tools →
 Convenient → Software
 update
- Tap Yes
 - Handset connects to network.
- Read Terms of Use → Agree

 Read Terms of Use before selecting Agree.
- 4 Tap PIN Code entry field →
 Enter Center Access Code
 (�P.1-20) → Tap OK → Tap OK
- Confirm result → Tap OK

- 6 Choose update method
 - To Update Immediately

 Update now
 - Update starts. When complete, handset powers off and restarts; notification appears.



■ To Schedule Later Update

Schedule update → Tap Yes → Select schedule date → Select schedule time → Confirm schedule date & time → Tap OK

- For procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Service.
- Confirming/downloading updates does not incur fees.
- At scheduled update time, message appears. Tap OK or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while handset is in use. When operation ends, a Message window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.



 To cancel Schedule update, perform 1 to 4 and tap Yes → Tap Cancel schedule → Tap Yes on the check result screen.

- Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.
- If Scheduled update time arrives while handset is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.
- Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.
- Handset Phone Book entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage from lost information, etc.
- Handset transmissions are disabled during update.
- Update may take some time to complete.
- Update failure may disable handset.
 Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center,
 Customer Assistance.
- If updated handset fails to restart, remove and reinsert battery then power on. If this fails, call SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.15-27).

Function List

Tool Bar Menu

Below are menu items shown on Toolbar in Standby.

Toolbox Manu Idam

	Toolbar Menu Item	Page	
Phon	Phone		
l	Call log	P.3-10	
l	Account details	P.1-13	
l	Favorites	P.3-7	
	Dial	P.3-2	
l	Phone book	P.2-15	
l	FIIOTIE DOOK	P.2-18	
Mess	aging		
	Pacainad mea	P.4-9	
l	Received msg.	P.4-12	
l	Create new	P.4-4	
l	Retrieve new	P.4-22	
l	Drafts	P.4-12	
l	Dialis	P.4-24	
l	Templates	P.4-12	
	Templates	P.4-19	
	Sent msg.	P.4-12	
l	Unsent msg.	P.4-12	
l	Server mail	P.4-25	
	Create new SMS	P.4-7	
l	Settings	P.14-10	
l	Memory status	P.12-11	

	Toolbar Menu Item	Page
Yaho	o!*	
	Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
	Menu list	P.5-3
	Bookmarks	P.5-8
	Saved pages	P.5-8
	Web search	P.5-10
	Enter URL	P.5-3
	Enter ORL	P.5-4
	History	P.5-10
	Inistory	P.5-12
	PC site browser	P.5-4
	Browser settings	P.14-13

^{*} Tap Menu → Tap Yahoo! to open menu items (table). Tap Yahoo! to access Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

Main Menu

To show the below items in Standby, tap Menu.

P	Main Menu Item	
Oekaki		
Oeka	aki anime	P.7-13
Oeka	aki pict	P.7-14
Photo Libi	rary	
Phot	o album	P.7-15
Phot	o movie	P.7-16
Crea	te Flash® slide	P.7-16
S! Appli		,
S! A	ppli List	P.9-3
Osai	fu-Keitai	P.10-6
Setti	ngs	P.14-21
Dem	and history	P.9-3
Entertainn	nent	
S! In	formation Channel/	P.9-6
Wea	ther	r.9-0
S! Q	uick News	P.9-5
Free	contents	P.9-6
S! C	ontents Store	P.9-6
S! Fr	iend's Status	P.9-7
S! A	ddressbook Back-up	P.13-15
Cray	on Physics	P.9-3
Biorh	nythm	P.9-12
Num	ber Place World	P.9-4
Touc	h Golf Pangya	P.9-4
Hidd	en Catch4	P.9-4
Dice		P.9-4
Rand	dom Ball	P.9-4

	Main Menu Item	Page
Camera		
Ca	imera	P.7-6
Su	b camera	P.7-6
Vie	deo camera	P.7-12
Ва	r code reader	P.10-14
Media		'
M	usic	P.8-5
M	ovie	P.8-7
Stı	reaming	P.5-7
	TP synch mode	P.8-3
Se	ttings	P.14-19
Tools		· ·
Lif	e	
	Alarm	P.10-3
	Calendar	P.10-4
	Tasks	P.10-5
	Osaifu-Keitai	P.10-6
	S! GPS Navi	P.10-8
	Expense manager	P.10-9
	World clock	P.10-10
	Stopwatch	P.10-10
	Countdown timer	P.10-10
	Good night timer	P.10-11
Co	nvenient	· ·
	Calculator	P.10-11
	Converter	P.10-12
	Notepad	P.10-13
	Infrared	P.13-3
	Bluetooth	P.13-5
	Voice recorder	P.10-13

	Main Menu Item	Page
	Bar code reader	P.10-14
	File viewer	P.10-16
	Dictionary	P.10-17
	Dummy call	P.10-17
	Software update	P.15-4
Data	Folder	
	Pictures	P.12-2
	Ring songs · tones	P.12-2
	S! Appli	P.12-2
	Widget	P.12-2
	Music	P.12-2
	Videos	P.12-2
	Lifestyle-Appli	P.12-2
	Books	P.12-2
	Message Templates	P.12-2
	Flash®	P.12-2
	Other Documents	P.12-2
	Memory status	P.12-3
Widg	get	
	Widget Store	P.9-14
	Widget list	P.9-14
	Settings	P.14-20
TV		
	Watch TV	P.6-5
	Program guide	P.6-6
	TV links	P.6-7
	TV player	P.6-9
	TV image	P.6-9
	Reservation list	P.6-9
	Settings	P.14-15

	Main Menu Item	Page	
Phor	Phone func.		
	Phonebook	P.2-15	
	Create new entry	P.2-17	
	Call log	P.3-10	
	Play answering machine	P.3-9	
	Call voice mail	P.3-16	
	Account details	P.1-13	
	S! Addressbook Back-up	P.13-15	
	Mail group	P.4-14	
	Favorites	P.3-7	
	Settings	P.14-9	
	Memory status	P.14-23	
Setti	ngs		
	Sound settings	P.14-3	
	Display settings	P.14-4	
	Phone settings	P.14-2	
	Touch panel	P.14-3	
	Security	P.14-22	
	Call settings	P.14-5	
	Manner mode settings	P.14-5	
	Connectivity	P.14-24	
	Network settings	P.14-25	
	Memory settings	P.14-23	
	Backup & Restore	P.14-23	

Text Entry Window Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Tap a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

is assigned to switch Pictograms/Single-byte Symbols/Double-byte Symbols/Emoticons entry mode. Visible keys differ depending on the text entry mode.

Text Entry Window Keys

Кеу	Purpose	
← / →	Move cursor, left, right	
4	Enter line break	
Clear / CLEAR	Delete one character before cursor or highlighted text	
5 / 🔼	Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection (except Numbers)	

Text Entry Keys

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Katakana
あ 1 .00	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ 1	ア / 7	アイウエオァィゥェォ 1
n 2 ABC	かきくけこ2	カ / л	カキクケコ2
さ 3 EEF	さしすせそ3	y / 9	サシスセソ3
7 ≿ 4 €H	たちつてとっ4	9 / 9	タチツテトッ4
な 5 JKL	なにぬねの5	<i>ታ /</i>	ナニヌネノ5
lat 6 MMO	はひふへほ6	л / л	ハヒフへホ6
ま 7 Pars	まみむめも7	₹ / ₹	マミムメモフ
₽ B TUV	やゆよゃゅょ8	ty / t	ヤユヨャュョ8
5 9 W/YZ	らりるれろ9	ラ / ラ	ラリルレロ9
わ 0	わをん-〈スペース〉0	ワニ / りょ	ワヲンー〈スペース〉0
?!	· · ?!		
*** 本 维/定	 Add * / * to unfixed, convertible kana Switch Upper case and lower case. (only Switch to Pictograms/Single-byte Symbo 		ode

Кеу	Alphanumerics	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Numbers
(double-byte) / (single-byte) ¹	.@/:~ 1	1 / 1	1
ABC / abc / ABC / abc	ABCabc2	2 / 2	2
DEF / def / DEF / def	DEFdef3	з / з	3
GHI / ghi / GHI / ghi	GHlghi4	4 / 4	4
JKL / jkl / JKL / jkl	JKLjkl5	5 / 5	5
MNO / mno / MNO / mno	MNOmno6	6 / 6	6
PQRS / pqrs / PQRS / pqrs	PQRSpqrs7	7 / 7	7
TUV / tuv / TUV / tuv	TUVtuv8	8 / 8	8
WXYZ / WXYZ / WXYZ / WXYZ	WXYZwxyz9	9 / 9	9
(double-byte) / (single-byte) ¹	<space>0</space>	0 / 0	0
(double-byte) / (single-byte) ¹	,.?!	# / #	#
A/a / A/0 / A/a / A/a ta/2 / ta/2	Switch Upper case and lower case. (only when conversion is possible) Switch to Pictograms/Single-byte Symbols/ Double-byte Symbols/Emoticons entry mode	60/12	Switch to Pictograms/Single-byte Symbols/Double-byte Symbols/ Emoticons entry mode

 $^{^{\}mbox{\scriptsize 1}}$ Both when upper-/lower-case, the same key indicates.

Double-byte Symbols

Single-byte Symbols

d 、 。! ? <スヘ-ス> " # \$ % & '() * + , - . / : ; <=>
@ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 「 」 · - **

Symbol Conversions

Symbol Label	Symbol	Symbol Label	Symbol
あっと	@ @	こめ	*
いこーる	= =	ころん	::
えん	¥¥	さんかく	$\triangle \blacktriangle \nabla \blacktriangledown$
おんぷ	Þ	しかく	$\Diamond \blacklozenge \Box \blacksquare$
かける	×	どう	> // 全々
	0 [] [] () ♦	ぱーせんと	% %
かっこ		ほし	☆★
	() ()	まる	$\bigcirc \bullet \bigcirc$
から	~	やじるし	→ ← ↑ ↓

Pictograms

(00)	0	0	(3	9		(*,*)	e		@	©	\$	<u>_</u>	6	(2)			(A)
9			-	~		<u></u>			8	-			~~	~				
	_	8	8	0	6	0	€ *	M	*	(2)	0	8	0)	9	*	99	9/	•
	\sim	•	9	₽	?	?	۵	الرول	÷+	★	*	49	#	-	4		4	බ
qu.	A	\(\partial\)	0	<u>L</u>	-	0	@ 0	9	Δ	8-9	640	0	<u></u>	۵	4,	ķ	%	€
80	zZ	×	90	-	4	$_{\odot}$	8-)	4	ම	3)	6	<u> </u>	.%	£	*	36	4
独	%	E .	7	1	0	3	0	M	()	a	9	E	4	7	83	**	88	B
₩	4	4	4	m	20	3·y	R	©	*	0	€.	3	<u>au</u>	4	(3)		a.	ん
400	0	ď	Ш	4	A.	000	Q.	>	Q	9		79	4-	6	a ″		M	•
00	P	-		> /		&.[2	1	₩.	per l	中	74	6	Φ	*	~Î	9	8
	a)SO			•			9			Ŧ	Ø	•	©	्रह्नी	P	63	©
Ö	•		٥	3	\$4	4	-	-			4	4	4	iii	a	e,	<u></u>	<u></u>
	4	<u></u>	B	1	X	蝉	€	W/	-635	A	Pile		9€	40	8			№ 2
8	-	A	P	A	6	3	m	U I	Ж	Ď			Ð	D	a	6	6	16
S	())	12	d _D ,	·	8	(m)	IMD	G	J.	4	1	6		9	4	2	4	9
ø.	9		D.	Š	12	Sal.	8	.44	35	M	28	•	4	®	•	29	-	22
0,	æ	0		8	•		獻	ě	2	8	Æ	•	0	菕	A			
411		4	90	Åå	0:	69			T.	9	e,A	(4)	<u></u>	4	fù.	1	4	
王	RA.	RTM		20	0	H				Ĉn	畫	عثد	*	î.	141		r-dl	<u> </u>
629	<u>ٿ</u>	GS	9	000	<u>A</u>	///		P	[1]	WC/	ė.	₩ <u>°</u>	•	8	3	70	10	100
TO	©	T	Ŵ	T)	Ø	7	(1)	T	Ō	×	*	•	•	•	71	K	71	V.
1	V	\rightarrow	←	\triangleright			40	P	9	Ç	÷	1	2	[3]	4	5	6	7
8	9	0	#	X	Υ	Q	Π	69	Ĵ	mo	Ω	m,	×Ζ¹	٧Ŝ	***	Ж	산	A
B	AB	0		榧		3		38		<u> </u>	A3	(•)	S pA	\$.¥	777	οκ	TÛP	NEV
UP!	€6,	=	VS.	満	2	得	割	[th]	指	営	(ID)	殉		厠		7 2	1	13
*	~			X		ō	0	Til	Ö	OFF	88	©	B	ТМ				

Appendix

• Pictograms with _____ are animated.

• Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

	1				
ST Mail/	Received msg.	Up to 1000 messages or 10MB			
SMS (Phone	Drafts	Up to 20 messages or 3MB			
	Sent msg.	Up to 500 messages or 5MB			
memory)	Unsent msg.	Up to 20 messages or 3MB			
SMS	USIM Card	Up to ten messages			
	Pictures				
	Ring songs · tones				
	S! Appli				
	Widget				
	Music				
Data Folder	Videos	Up to 9999 items (files/subfolders) per folder or 100 MB			
rolaci	Lifestyle-Appli				
	Books				
	Message Templates				
	Flash®				
	Other Documents				
Calendar/ Tasks	Up to 500 schedules/tasks				
Notepad	Up to 100 memos				
Phonebook	Handset	Up to 1000 members			
FIIONEDOOK	USIM Card	Up to 50 members			

Specifications

Handset specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 940SC

Item	Specification
Weight*	143 g
Continuous Talk Time*	3G Voice Call: 400 minutes/ GSM Network: 440 minutes 3G Video Call: 150 minutes
Continuous Standby Time* (Display off)	3G Network: 600 hours/ GSM Network: 480 hours
Dimensions (W x H x D) *	57x115.9x13.50 mm
Maximum Output	0.25 W

- * Approximate value
- Handset with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank Mobile under stable signal conditions.
 Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving handset on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent handset operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Time.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal
 conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully
 charged battery with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby,
 in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens
 Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time
 may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Туре	Lithium-ion
Capacity	1500 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 64.5 x 44.0 x 5.0 mm (without protruding parts)

15-14

Index

A
AC Charger1-11
Account Details
Add location info
Adjust Volume
Alarms
All Reset11-9
Answering Machine 3-8 Cancel 3-8 Delete records 3-9 Play records 3-9 Set 3-8 Auto answer 3-23, 14-8 Auto answer list 3-23 Delete 3-23 Auto Lock 11-4
Auto redial
Auto redial14-9

Battery1-9, 1-10
Inserting & Removing1-10
Biorhythm
Black List
Bluetooth®13-5
Activate/Cancel
Address
Answering mode
Applicable profiles
Authorization Code
Bluetooth services
Connectivity
Delete paired devices
Device
Edit device name
Paired device
Paired Devices Indicators
Print
Receive files
Search Devices
Secure mode
Send files
Visibility
Bookmark
Delete
Internet connection
Save5-8
Send URL5-16
BookSurfing®9-12
Built-in Stand

Calculator10-1	1
Calendar	-4
Delete schedule	19
Save schedule 10-5, 10-	8
Schedule	-4
View schedule 10-5, 10-7	9
Calibrate Touch Panel	-3
Call	
Phone Book	19
Call Barring service 3-15, 3-1	9
Caller ID service	1
Call Forwarding service 3-15, 3-1	7
Call Log	0
Check	
Delete	12
Call time & cost	
Check	12
Reset	12
Set max cost limit	-7
Show charge after call	-6
Call Waiting service 3-15, 3-1	8
Camera	-3
Anti-Shake	17
Attach to message for sending still image7-	8
Capture video	2
Editing Still Images7-	13

Effects
Macro
Multi shot
Panorama shot7-8
Photo combination
Quick Play
Scene
Send a still image via Bluetooth®
Send a still image via IC transmission 7-18
Send a still image via infrared7-18
Settings
Smile shot
Sub Camera
Timer
Viewfinder
Wide dynamic range
Cancel PIN lock
Center Access Code
Change mode settings
Changing PIN/PIN2
Charge Battery1-11
Charger Port
Clear memory
Conference Call service 3-15, 3-18
Content Key info
Convenient tools
Converter
Countdown Timer

Country number	,
Crayon Physics9-3	;
D	
Data Folder	
Date & Time14-2	!
Default mode settings1-17	,
Dice	ļ
Dictionary	,
Digital TV	,
Alarm)
Area Setup6-4	į
Auto power off	,
Calls & Alarms	,
Data Broadcast)
Delete station data14-16)
Display brightness)
Duration)
Image location	j
Light	,
Manufacture Number	į
Notify connection	į
One Seg	
Record programs	j
Reminder time	į
Save Location	
Set alert tone	
Set recording 1/1-16	

Settings 6-12, 14-1	15
Sound language14-1	16
Sound mode	16
Sound output14-1	16
Subtitle Display6-1	12
Timer recording	
TV Links6	-7
TV player	_9
TV Window	-5
Vibration	15
Volume	15
Watch TV	- 5
Display1-	-3
Backlight	
Brightness	
Operator name14	
Wallpaper	
Display language14	- 2
Download Content Key 8-9, 12-1	
•	
Dummy Call	4
_	
E	
Earphone call14-	. 9
Emergency call3-	-8
Emergency Location Report3	
Location neport	•

Þ
Ó
ᅏ
ä
d
Ξ.

Face Link	
Save	12-5
Use	12-6
Facial Recognition	
Settings	11-5
User registration	11-6
Favorites	
File	12-4, 12-7
Сору	12-8
Delete	12-8
lcon	12-4
Lock/Unlock	12-13
Rename	12-7
Set images as Wallpaper etc	
Set Ringtone	
Sort	12-12
File Viewer	10-16
Folder	
Copy	
Create	
Delete	
Rename	12-7
Free Contents	9-6
Function Lock	11-7

G
Games
Global Roaming
Good Night Timer 10-11, 10-24
н
п
Hidden Catch49-4
History
Delete
Delete (S! Mail)
Delete (SMS)
Internet connection 5-3, 5-4
Media Player
S! Addressbook Back-up
S! Mail
SMS4-20
Streaming
Hold1-5
Hold incoming call
Hold Video Call
1
Icon
Attached file
Call Log Record
Data Folder

Display
File list
Message
Message list4-9
Mode1-16
Movie window
Music window
My Status9-9
Oekaki Anime
Oekaki Pict
Schedule
S! Friend's Status
Shooting mode (still image)
Shooting mode (video)
Video Call
Weather9-7
Widget2-2
C transmission
mage Viewer
ncoming light1-18
nfrared
Authorization Code
Receive files
Send files
nternational Code14-6
nternet
nternet page
Font size 5-11 5-13

\triangleright
0
0
œ
⊇
0
\simeq

1	5
ш	ᆫ

K	Templates
ock1-14	Unsent
	Mail Group
L	Manner mode
_	Mass Storage 13-10, 14-25
je14-2	Media Player
tools10-2	Add to playlist 8-9, 8-11
avi	Create playlist
11-3	Download
11-4	Play movie
ock10-7	Play music
11-5	Play playlist
11-7	Repeat mode
	Settings
Lock	Memory Card12-9
	Insert/Remove
	Memory Card backup
	·
ıd Key	Memory Status
	Menu Operationsiii
	Message
	3D Pictograms 4-9, 4-19, 4-21, 4-23, 14-10
	Action settings
М	Attach file
	Change folder name
	Create folder
4-12	Create (S! Mail)
age	Create (SMS)
4-12	Delete

Delete folder
Delete messages on Server
Delete templates
Details
Oraft message icon
Feeling settings
-ont size
Forward
Forward messages on Server
Graphic Mail
con (attached file)
ocation Information
_ock/Unlock
Mail Service
Maximum Size
Memory Status
Message notice
Move4-16
Move SMS
Received message icon4-10
Receive Server Mail
Receiving mail list message 4-25
Reply
Retrieve all mail
Save attachment 4-14, 4-22
Save templates
Save to drafts
Send draft message
Sending options 4-19, 4-21
Send unsent message4-24

I-4	15
17	×.
14	enc
13	App
13	
3-5	
3-2	
I-4	
20	
I-4	
20	
I-4	

Set Secret .4-26 Oekak Setting address .4-4 Oekaki A SI Mail .4-2 Oekaki A SI Mail Send Reservation .4-19 Send SMS .4-2, 4-20 Offline N Osaifu-K Activa Osaifu-K Spam .4-16, 4-24 Activa Spam .4-10 Unsent message icon .4-10 Use templates .4-8 4-9 View .4-8, 4-9 Yow Attachment .4-22 View Attachment .4-22 Passwor Motion Control .1-7 PC Site II Copy to Delete Details Copy to Delete Details Entert Details Setwork mode .3-13 Font s Metwork Password 1-20 Crint Change .3-20 Script	Server Mail memory 4-26 Oekaki Set Secret. 4-26 Oeka Setting address 4-4 Oekaki S! Mail. 4-2 Oekaki S! Mail Send Reservation 4-19 Send SMS 4-2, 4-20 Offline SMS Send Reservation 4-21 Osaifu-Activ Sort 4-16, 4-24 Activ Spam 4-16 4-10 Use templates 4-8 View View 4-8, 4-9 Passwo View Attachment 4-22 Passwo Motion Control 1-7 PC Site Mute 2-5, 3-21, 3-22 Certi Copy Dele Deta Deta Ente Network mode 3-13 Man Metwork Password 1-20 Man Change 3-20 Scrip Sear Scrip Sear Sear Solotepad 10-13 Motification light 1-19	Sent message icon		
SI Mail Send Reservation	SI Mail Send Reservation	Server Mail memory		Oekaki Oekaki Oekaki
N	Notion Control	S! Mail Send Reservation		Oekaki Ar Send Offline M Osaifu-Ke Activate Downlo
N Certific Copy of Delete Details N Details Details Details Potails Details Idear Chat 9-10 Enter of Details Idetwork mode 3-13 Font some Manual Change Change 3-20 PC script Script Script	N Certific Copy N Deler Detail Detail Detail Detail Network mode .3-13 Font Network Password .1-20 Man Change .3-20 PC so Notepad .10-13 Searn Searn Searn Searn Searn Send		,	Password
Details	Deta			PC Site Br
Network mode. 3-13 Font s Network Password 1-20 Manuf Change 3-20 PC scr Script Script Script	Network mode. 3-13 Font Network Password 1-20 Man Change 3-20 PC so Notepad 10-13 Searn Soutification light 1-19 Searn Send Send Send			1.7
Search Notification light1-19 Send U	Phone			Delete o
Phone B	Сору	lear Chat Network mode. Network Password Change Notepad. Notification light.		Delete o

U
Oekaki .7-13 Oekaki Anime .7-13 Oekaki Pict. .7-14
Oekaki Anime Send
Offline Mode
Osaifu-Keitai®10-6Activate Lifestyle-Appli10-6Download Lifestyle-Appli10-6
P
Password Lock
PC Site Browser. .5-4 Certificate retention .14-15 Copy text .5-12 Delete certificates .14-14 Details .5-13 Enter URL .5-4 Font size .14-4 Manufacture Number .14-15 PC screen .5-14 Script .14-15 Search .5-13 Send URL .5-13 Phone Book .2-15
Copy

Delete
Edit
Entry
Search
Set Secret mode
Phone Lock
Phone Number (Account Details) 1-13
Phone Password 1-20, 11-3
Photo Album
Photo Library
Flash® Slide
Photo Album
Photo movie
PIN11-4
PIN2 Code
PIN Certification
PIN Code
PIN lock
Place a call
Place a Video Call
Place International calls
Power On/Off
Preferred network
Print Still Images7-17
PUK Code11-4

R
Random Ball9-4
Receive a call
Receive a Video Call3-6
Record
Reject incoming calls Black List .3-24 Edit black list .14-8 Payphone .3-10 Set reject number .3-9 Unavailable .3-10 Unknown .3-10 Withheld .3-10 Reset settings .11-8 Ringtone .1-17 Ringtone reducer .14-9 Ringtone/Vibration .2-5 RSS Feed .5-9 Delete .5-18
Register
Update5-9
view5-9

5
S! Addressbook Back-up .13-12 Sync log .13-15 Sync mode .13-13
S! Applications
Saved Pages. 5-8 Delete 5-18 Rename 5-17 Save 5-8 View 5-8
S! Contents Store9-6
Secret mode
Security Code
Select 3G/GMS3-13
Sending DTMF
Set default memory14-23
S! Friend's Status 9-7 Members list .9-7 My Status .9-7, 9-9 S! Friend's Status notification .9-8
S! GPS Navi 10-8 Check Current Location 10-9 My location 10-22 View location history 10-23
Shortcut Icon
Shortcuts Key

S! Information Channel	9-6
Register	9-6
View update information	9-6
Weather Indicator	9-7
S! Information Channel/Weather	
Settings	14-20
Slide show	2-6, 12-12
Software update	15-4
Sounds & Vibration	
Speakerphone call	
S! Quick News	
Delete	
Refresh	
Register	
SSL/TLS	5-2
Stopwatch	10-10
Streaming	5-7
Swipe	1-5, 2-4
Symbols	15-11
System sounds	1-18
-,	
T	
Гар	1.5
•	
Tasks	
Delete	10-21

 Text Entry.
 2-8

 Copy
 .2-20

Cut 2-20 Delete 2-13 Edit 2-13 Emoticons 2-11 Entry mode 2-9 Handwriting 2-10 Keypad 2-10 Line Break 2-12 Paste 2-20 Pictograms 2-11	USIM Card	Voice Call 3-2 Adjust ringer volume 3-2 Adjust volume 3-3 Hold incoming call 3-3 Mute 3-21 Speakerphone call 3-21 Whisper 3-21 Voicemail service 3-15 Voice Recorder 10-13 Lock/Unlock sound files 10-26
Space. 2-12 Symbol. 2-11 Undo. 2-20 Time zone 14-2 Toolbar. ii Touch Golf Pangya. 9-4 Touch Panel & Key Lock. 1-14	vFile	Play sound files
Touch Panel Operations. ii, 1-5, 1-6 TV Capturing still image	Send video via Infrared. .7-20 Video Call .3-5 Adjust volume .3-6 Alternative picture .14-7 Auto answer .14-8 Mute .3-22 Put a Video Call on hold .3-22 Retry with .14-8 Show My Image .14-8 Speakerphone call .3-22 View Graphics/Animation .12-5	Widgets 2-7, 9-13 Add 9-15, 9-16 Mini Player 9-18 S! Friend's Status 9-17 Shortcut 9-20 S! Quick News 9-17 Wallpaper 9-16 Window Operations 2-7 Window Calendar 10-4 Member States window 9-8 Movie window 8-6

5	₹.
1	5

Music window	Objective Index	Phone Lock
Still Image Viewer	Add	Secret mode
TV window	Favorites	Vibration
Video Viewfinder	Widget9-15, 9-16	Voicemail
Voice Recorder	Adjust volume	Whisper
	Hearing volume	Change
Window Operations Phone Book window	Ringtone volume	Font size in page 5-11, 5-13
Text Entry Window	Backup	Mail address
Widget	Memory Card13-11	Mode1-16
3	Phone Book	Network Password 3-20
World Clock		Phone Password
	Cancel/Unlock	PIN
Υ	Answering Machine	PIN2
Yahoo! Keitai5-3	Bluetooth®	
Copy text		Check
Delete Certificate	Call Barring	Current Location
Details	Caller ID	Сору
Enter URL5-3	Call Forwarding	File/Folder
Font size	Call Waiting	Message content
Manufacture Number	Facial Recognition	Scanned characters
Refresh	File Lock	Text
Root Certificates	Infrared	Text in page 5-10, 5-12
Script	Key Lock	Create
Search	Manner mode	Flash® Slide
Send URL5-11	Message Lock	Photo movie7-16
Selid ONE5-11	Messages	Delete/Clear
N. I	Near Chat	Call Log
Number	Offline Mode	Favorites
3G/GSM	Password Lock	File/Folder

History	Memory Card12-10	Near Chat
Memory	USIM Card	USB connection
Messages	Place a call	Register
Motions	Emergency call	RSS Feed
Notepad	International call	Reset
Phone Book	Video Call	Account Details
Recorded programs	Voice Call	Alarm
Records (Answering Machine)	Play	All Reset
Reject Number	Flash® 5-11, 5-13	Call Time & Cost
RSS Feed	Movie	Ranking
Schedule	Music	Reset settings
S! Friend's Status member	Photo movie	Save
Tasks	Playlist	Expense information
Text	Recorded programs	Face Link
User's Dictionary	Records (Answering Machine)	Facial Recognition
Widget9-15	Sound	Mail address
dit	Voice Recorder	Message
Account Details	Protect/Lock	Phone Book entry 2-15, 2-17
Phone Book entry	File	S! Friend's Status
Schedule	Files10-27	Tasks
Still images	Function Lock	User's Dictionary
Tasks	Message	Search
Text	Messages4-14	Bluetooth®
nitialize	Receive	Characters in page
Browser 5-12, 5-14	Bluetooth®13-7	Notepad
nitiate	IC transmission	Phone Book entry
Memory Card12-9	Infrared	Tasks
nsert/Remove	Message	Send
Battery	Messages	Bluetooth®13-6
,	J	Diuetootii13-0

Favorites	File Lock
Files12-12	Font14-4
IC transmission	Font size
Infrared	Font size in Message
Manufacture Number	Infrared
Massage (SMS)	International Code
Message (S! Mail)	Key Lock
Notepad	Manner mode
Oekaki7-22	Media Player
RSS Feed	Message Lock
Tasks	Missed Call Notification
URL	Near Chat
USB connection	Offline Mode
Set/Activate	Operator
Alarm	Password Lock
Answering Machine	Phone Book
Auto Lock	Phone Lock
Black List	PIN Lock
Bluetooth [®] 13-5	Reject incoming calls
Call Barring	Ringtone
Caller ID	Secret mode 2-21, 11-7
Call Forwarding	Sounds & Vibration14-3
Call Waiting	Still images 7-18, 12-13
Camera	Vibration
Channel	Video
Date & Time	Voicemail
Digital TV 6-12, 14-15	Wallpaper
Display	Whisper3-21
Dummy Call	Show
Facial Recognition	Calendar

Call Log
Cost after call
Records (Answering Machine)
Update
RSS Feed
View
Account Details
Call Log
Call time & cost
Captured Pictures7-9
12-4 Data Folder
Data on Memory Card
Expense Manager
Location history
Memory status
Message 4-8, 4-9, 4-22, 4-25
Photo Album
Ranking
Recorded Video
Reservation
RSS Feed
Scanned Barcode
Schedule
Tasks

Appendix

Advanced Settings Index

Account Details
Alarm10-24
Barcode Reader
Bluetooth [®] 13-14
Bookmarks
Calculator
Calendar
Call Log Records/Ranking
Capturing Still Images7-18
Conference Call
Countdown Timer
Currency/Unit Conversion
Dictionary
Expense Manager
Facial Recognition
File Viewer
Managing Files/Folders
Managing Folders
Memory Status12-14
Movie Playback
Music Playback
Notepad
Oekaki
Osaifu-Keitai [®]

Page Operations
PC Site Browser5-12
Phone Book
Photo Library
Received Messages
Recording Videos
RSS Feed
S! Addressbook Back-up
Saved Pages
Sending S! Mail4-17
Sending SMS
S! Friend's Status9-21
S! GPS Navi
S! Information Channel
S! Quick News
Standby
Stopwatch
Streaming
Tasks
Text Entry2-20
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording 6-13
User's Dictionary
Using/Managing Messages
Video Call
Viewing Files

Voice Call	1
Voice Recorder10-2	5
While Watching TV6-1	1
Widgets	3
World Clock	4
Yahoo! Keitai5-10	0

Warranty & Service

Headset specification may change without prior notice.

Warranty

Handset purchase includes Warranty.

- Confirm shop name and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting handset for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" (�P.15-2) for a solution. If a problem persists, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (�P.15-27) or the nearest SoftBank Shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- Handset files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phone Book entries.
 SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of handset files (Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.
- Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank Mobile will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

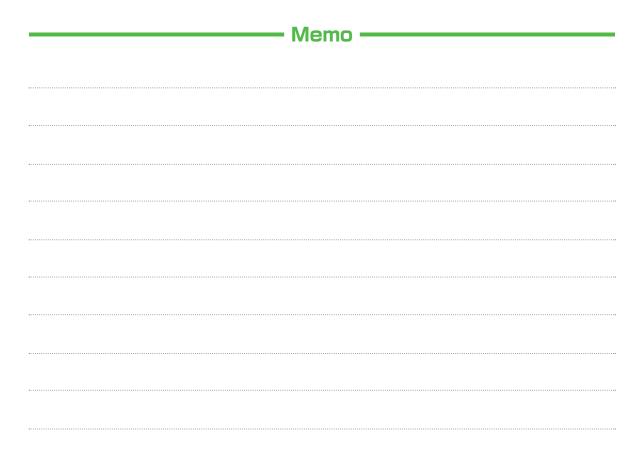
From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or 113 for Customer Assistance, toll free.

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491. (Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	© 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	(3 2) 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	© 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	© 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	© 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	© 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	© 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	© 0088-250-113



SoftBank 940SC User Guide

November 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.



To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

- Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned
- To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.
- For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Model Name: SoftBank 940SC

Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.